







2633. T. G. o. 2. d.





A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
C A P E O F G O O D H O P E,  
TOWARDS THE  
ANTARCTIC POLAR CIRCLE,  
AND  
R O U N D T H E W O R L D:  
BUT CHIEFLY INTO THE  
COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS AND CAFFRES,  
FROM THE YEAR 1772, TO 1776.

BY ANDREW SPARRMAN, M.D.

PROFESSOR OF PHYSIC AT STOCKHOLM, FELLOW OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES  
IN SWEDEN, AND INSPECTOR OF ITS CABINET OF NATURAL HISTORY.

TRANSLATED FROM THE SWEDISH ORIGINAL.

WITH PLATES.

I N T W O V O L U M E S.

V O L . II.

L O N D O N :

PRINTED FOR G. G. J. AND J. ROBINSON, PATER-NOSTER-ROW.

M DCC LXXXV.



V O Y A G E

TO THE

COPY OF GOOD HOPE

TOWARDS THE

ANTARCTIC POLAR CIRCULE

AND

ROUND THE WORLD:

BY CHRISTOPHER CLARK

COURTESY OF THE HOTTENTOTS AND GAMBRES

FROM THE YEAR 1771 TO 1781

BY ANDREW SPARRMAN, M.D.

PROFESSOR OF ANATOMY, FELLOW OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF LONDON  
IN SWEDEN, AND DIRECTOR OF THE OBSERVATORY OF UPPSALA

TRANSLATED FROM THE SWEDISH ORIGINAL

WITH PLATES

IN TWO VOLUMES

VOL. II

LONDON

PRINTED BY G. ALLEN, LONDON, WATER-LOO-STREET

## C O N T E N T S.

## C H A P. X.

## JOURNEY FROM SEA-COW-RIVER TO LITTLE SUNDAY-RIVER.

Set out on their journey. Camtours-river. Description of the Hottentot Capt. Kies, who is treated *ans ceremonie* by the author's Hottentot Plattje. A farmer's account of the great drought, and of a hoard of Caffres he had met with on the road. Galgebosch. No water to be had. Van Staade's river. Are visited by some Gonaquas Hottentots. Description of the persons, drefs, &c. of these people. Throw their javelins at a mark. Not remarkable for dexterity in this point. A grain called holcus forgum yields an inebriating liquor. Their waggon in danger of being blown into the air, from their having inadvertently set fire to the grafs. Caroufal of hunters. The salt-pans. Description of the cimex paradoxus, or leaf-insect. Mr. Immelman spits blood. Is in danger of being tossed by buffaloes. Guinea-hens. Appearance of the banks of Sunday-river. Hire several Boshies-men to attend them in their expedition. Give chase to an uncommon species of wood-swine. Description of these animals. Hottentot or bastard Caffres. Their dance and song. Voluptuous practices of the youths of both sexes during dancing. Envenomed wound. Curious milk-baskets. Method of milking. Circumcision practised by these people. Conclusion of the milking by singing and dancing. The author turns conjuror. Bastard-Caffre conjuror well paid. Fox-tails for warm weather. Buffalo-lice, p. 37.

## C H A P. XI.

## JOURNEY FROM LITTLE SUNDAYS-RIVER TO BOSHIES-MANS-RIVER.

Concerto of lions. Their roaring described. Preparations made against an attack from these beasts. Animals fear the lion by instinct, and perceive him at a distance, even when he does not roar. Lions few in number,

number, compared with other animals. Not so bold since the Dutch have introduced the use of fire-arms into that part of Africa. Do not immediately kill a man, except in case of resistance. Neither do they attack any animal openly, except irritated or very hungry. Measure the length of their leap, when they have missed their prey by leaping over it or short of it. Lurk chiefly near rivers. Scared away by the noise made with an ox-whip. Singular escape of a Hottentot from a lion. Lion frequently betrays marks of cowardice. Instance of a lion being shot with its prey lying under it untouched. In general content with wounding its prey, if it be a human creature. The cause of this investigated. Ludicrous situation of a farmer pursued by a lion. Great strength of this animal. Not strong enough, however, to overpower the buffalo, without having recourse to art. Artful expedient of one for carrying off a buffalo. Instance of a buffalo's keeping five lions at bay. Lion easily torn in pieces by a dozen farmer's dogs. Horses fond of hunting lions and other fierce animals. The chase of the lion described. Colonists hunt them with great eagerness. Not hard to kill with guns. Its hide tender and penetrable. Their principal Hottentot marksman shoots a buffalo. Description of the buffalo. Its ears by the Hottentots supposed to be torn by evil spirits. A treacherous and cruel animal. Fond of lying down in the water, or wallowing in the mire. Buffalo-calf. The calves might be brought up tame. The flesh good eating. Cannot be shot with balls of lead alone. The game wantonly destroyed in great abundance by some sportsmen. Gluttony of the Hottentots. Amuse themselves with cracking jests on their masters, in their own language. Smoke cow-dung in default of tobacco. Idle in the highest degree, and difficult to govern, p. 73.

## C H A P. XII.

## JOURNEY FROM BOSHIES-MANS-RIVER TO QUAMMEDACKA.

Sneezing-wood in Niez-hout-kloof. The honorary degree of doctor conferred on the author in his absence. Butterfly-hunter in danger of being impaled like the insects he had caught. A buffalo-hunt. Nastiness of the Hottentots. Paint their cheeks black when they go a courting. Amorous combat between two tiger-cats. Ostrich-chicks. Rank water. Ridiculous neatness of a Dutchman. Description of the spring-bok. Leaps very high, and expands the white list on its back, when pursued. Very swift. Quammedacka well. Look out there for the two-horned rhinoceros. Kolbe never saw this animal in reality.  
The

## C O N T E N T S.

v

The author's cruelty to some birds dying with thirst. Alarmed all night long by a lion. The raw root of a species of purslain very good eating, as is that of the da-t'kai. Hottentots shoot two rhinoceroses. The manner in which they informed the author of it. The description and anatomy of the rhinoceros. The author and his friend in great danger from one. Meet a herd of elk-antilopes, and afterwards with a party of colonists, p. 117.

### C H A P. XIII.

#### JOURNEY FROM QUAMMEDACKA TO AGTER BRUNTJES-HOOGTE.

Hunt a couple of lions. Ostriches nest. The male ostrich assists the female in the act of incubation. This bird's feathers made use of for chasing away the flies. Eggs used for pan-cakes, &c. but not equal to those of hens in goodness. Ostriches do not hide their eggs when pursued. Buffon criticised on this subject, as well as with respect to his account of this bird's skin. Its cry like the lion's roar. Alluded to by the prophet Micah. The young have no cry. Ostriches become very tame. Might be brought to bear burdens. Chiefly found in the carrow countries. Hunting the buffalo. Ludicrous scene of the Hottentots loaded with the flesh. Dismal situation of the author, when benighted, at a distance from his waggon, in a storm. Description of the gnu. Its classification. The gnu met with here very vicious. Manner of keeping Christmas-eve in the desert. Meet with some colonists. Ludicrous description of the dress and figure of the two travellers. Hippopotamus's skulls. The author indisposed. He and his party begin to want bread. Convulsive motions in the muscles of a dead hart-beest, p. 139.

### C H A P. XIV.

#### RESIDENCE AT AGTER BRUNTJES-HOOGTE.

Arrival at Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte. Cattle out of doors all winter. Cold in these parts. Ravages committed by the Boshies-men here. Havock made among them by the colonists. Snefe-Hottentots. Their complexion and temper. Geographical observations on the country they inhabit. The Tambuki silver mines. Disquisition concerning the unicorn. The country of the Caffres. Their government and wars. The

The massacre of Heuppenaer and his party in this country. King Ruyter's craal. Ruyter's history, tyrannical behaviour and wars. Comparison between the respective modes of fighting of the Hottentots and Caffres. Slaves of the Christians more warlike than either, and much esteemed by the Caffres. Description of Camdebo. Roads from thence to the Cape. Plan formed for extending the journey. It proves abortive on many accounts. Delightful situation and fertility of Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte. Happy lives of the farmers there. The foot made by them an index to the road. Commodious posture of sitting. Extreme moderation in furniture and dress. Their virtues. Friendly proposal from a female. New cure for the gout. Advantages of the medical art to mankind. Worms universally mistaken here for pulmonary complaints. The gnu. The viverra cristata, or grey jackal, onkjes- and common jackal. Description of the ratel. Its manner of plundering bees nests. Very difficult to kill. The zerda, or animal anonyme of Buffon. Bruce's mistake concerning it rectified. Description of the honey-guide. Mistake in the Philos. Trans. rectified. The jerboa Capensis. The bleesmoll, or mus Capensis. The zand-moll, or mus Caffer, resembles the rhinoceros. The talpa Asiatica, or variable mole, more properly the forex aureus, described. Answer to Dr. Pallas's query. The gazels of this country described. The hartbeest and elk-antelope, the fat of this latter very fine. They migrate to the southward in great droughts. Chase of an elk-antelope. The beast sweats blood. Dangers of the chase in this country. The author's horse falls with him. The koedoe, or coudou. Pleasant mistake of Buffon concerning the name. The Cape-chamois, or gemse-bok, somewhat resembles the elk of Kolbe. The blaauw-bok, bunte-bok, and gnu. The ree-bok, riet-ree-bok, vlak-steen-bok, steen-bok, duyker-bok and klip-springer. A baboon hunt—the dogs shew more malice against this animal than against any other. Strictures on Buffon's opinion concerning the necessity of a meat-diet for man. Description of the camelopardalis. Defence of Hasselquist against Buffon. Pleasant opinion of the latter concerning the horns of oxen. Buffon convicted of setting the horns on the wrong head, p. 248.

# C O N T E N T S.

vii

## C H A P. XV.

### JOURNEY FROM AGTER BRUNTJES-HOOGTE TO THE TWO VISCH-RIVERS, AND RESIDENCE AT THOSE PLACES.

Departure from Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte. Beauty in a desert. Shoot a tiger. Instance of a tiger got the better of by a slave. Unwelcome visit from a large party of Caffres. Preparations for their reception. The conference. Their method of slaughtering their meat. Heaps of stones, probably antique monuments. Kok's-craal. Amazing swiftness of the Hottentots. Blockade of the sea-cows in their pits. Great danger from one of them. Cry of this animal described. A sea-cow shot by one of the party in his sleep. Her calf carried off and slaughtered. Description of it. The hippopotamus lives entirely on herbs and grass. Is sometimes seen in the sea, but cannot drink the salt water. Copulation, size, and method of catching these animals. Not slow in their pace. Medical virtues of their skulls. Anatomy of the calf. Leaches of a new species about its anus. Disquisition on its different names. Proposals for catching and keeping these animals alive. The waggon in danger of being overturned by a rhinoceros in its flight. A rhinoceros hunt. A Hottentot coward becomes bold from sensibility. The fine scent of the Hottentots accounted for. Two of the Hottentots in the author's train shoot a rhinoceros asleep. Hottentot bribe. Instance of their peculiar turn of mind. Love in a desert. Drowsiness the effect of love. Recipe for that passion. Billet-doux of a forester, p. 300.

## C H A P. XVI.

### JOURNEY BACK TO THE CAPE.

Rhinoceros hunt. Dangerous ride in the dark. Diabolical yell of a pack of hyænas. Congé of a Hottentot. Plettenberg's colony. Artifice of a hippopotamus to breathe in the water. Another of a colonist to cheat the government. The golden age restored among the Gunjeman Hottentots. The riches of a female Gunjeman. Simplicity of their diet. Zwartkops-river. Boldness of three young lions. Damaquas Hottentots. The sea-cows go to sea with the tide. The company scared by a buffalo, and lost in a wood. The travellers return to their old host, J. Kok. Inconvenience of feather beds. Red wine and oysters. Scorched serpents.

serpents. The *bullia achatina*. A country in flames. Wagenboom-river. The author loses his way on horseback in a dreadful storm of thunder and lightning. Method of converting grapes into raisins. Famine arising from the drought. Revisit Artaquas-kloof. The author's collections hurt by the waggon's overturning there. Valsche-rivier. Great scarcity of ploughshares in Africa, and of wrought iron in general. A battle royal between a Hottentot and his wife. A receipt to promote union in the married state. The imaginary gold-mine. The aloe plant discovered by a Negro slave. Method of preparing the gum from it. The *geitje*, a highly venomous lizard. Dreadful consequences of its bite. Cured by a slave. Conjectures on its origin. Description of this animal. Systematical description of the *lacerta Capensis*. A very large species of lizard, and very difficult to kill. Description of a singular anonymous quadruped. A farmer murdered by his slaves. Surprising escape of his son. Cruelty of the colonists to their slaves, and horrid punishments inflicted on them. Public executions only serve to irritate the rest. Different dispositions of the slaves of different nations. Peculiar turn of mind of the Bugunese. The author returns by the way of Roode-zand. A lake newly discovered at Sneeuwberg. Brandy made from a species of cactus. Arrival at the Cape, p. 350.

A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
C A P E O F G O O D H O P E.

---

C H A P. X.

JOURNEY FROM SEA-COW-RIVER TO LITTLE  
SUNDAY-RIVER.

**O**N the 1st day of December we set off on our journey eastward from *Zee-koe-rivier*, and the next morning from *Cabeljauw-rivier*, which was the last place we came to that was inhabited by christians. At noon we reached *Camtours-rivier*, where we baited.

Here a Hottentot captain, or rather a patriarch, exercised dominion over about half a hundred people, but was still in his way a soveraign. He was a little old man, of the name of KIES. I should at first sight have been easily tempted to consider him as reigning merely over women,

1775.  
December.



as at that time the company, in which we found him smoking his pipe consisted only of females; for the men (excepting some few who lay ill of a putrid fever) were all out, some of them to hunt a lion, which had lately committed ravages among their cattle; and the others, it was said, were gone to a great distance, in order to gather a certain succulent plant, which they made use of for chewing, either for the sake of passing the time away, or on account of its being of a pleasant taste, and having the property of assuaging their hunger. Captain KIES, therefore, absolutely denied our request; which was, that he would let us have some of his Hottentots by way of guides, who might likewise be a necessary assistance to us, and reinforcement of our company in the journey we were going to make through the wilderness.

In the meanwhile, I could not help being rather ashamed of the rude behaviour of my third Hottentot or marksman, PLATTJE; for though I had hitherto never seen him at all blunt in his behaviour, but had remarked, on the contrary, that he had always addressed these Hottentot patriarchs with some kind of respect, I now observed, that immediately on our coming into the presence of a person of such great authority, without the least bow or ceremony of any kind, he went uninvited and sat himself down by the side of him, at the same time filling his pipe out of the other's pouch, and calling about him for milk to drink. This behaviour, nevertheless, did not seem to be at all taken ill; on the contrary, they immediately brought him a cup of bagged milk. I observed at this time, as well as on my return hither, that KIES like Captain RUNDGANGER, of whom

whom I made mention at page 240, of Volume I. always had his captain's staff in his hand or else close by him; and this staff, was every way as plain and simple as RUNDGANGER'S: but though KIES was much better circumstanced with regard both to the number of his people and of his cattle, yet he as good as dwelt with his court and the rest of his subjects in the open air; his palace consisting only of a few poles set up slanting in the earth with a ragged mat thrown over them, which of course admitted the wind in several places, and let in the rain in wet weather. This shed, thus open on three sides, and in a great measure at the top, was, however, useful enough at that time of the year, and in that warm climate. The winter, or more properly speaking, the rainy season, would, probably, oblige them to provide themselves with a better dwelling.

1775.  
December.

That same day we continued our journey, making towards *Loory-rivier*, where we took up our abode at night. Here we met with a farmer, who in his ox-waggon had followed the course of *Zondags-rivier* all the way from *Camdebo*; a country of that kind which I have described at page 246 of Volume I. under the denomination of *Carrow*. He informed us, that this year, in which the drought was unusually great in all parts, it was remarkably so there, as scarcely a drop of rain had fallen there in the space of eight months; but just as he was leaving those parts, he had had several showers along the course of that river.

He, therefore, dissuaded us from taking that road, as it was, for the greater part of it, entirely unbeaten, arid, and rugged; and likewise, because both water and game were

1775.  
December.

extremely scarce there. In consequence of this latter circumstance, as his provisions were almost entirely spent, he was just going to knock one of his draught-oxen on the head, by way of procuring food for himself and his suite, when two hartbeests by great good-luck came up directly to the waggon, in order to take a view of it, one of which he immediately shot.

This same peasant had unexpectedly met on this road with about an hundred wandering Caffres. Their patriarch or chief, had proposed to sleep the first night along with the farmer in his waggon, who, on the other hand, should sleep with him in his tent the night following. This the farmer not consenting to, the Caffre patriarch was so far from taking it ill, that, on the contrary, he had killed an ox, and presented the farmer and his suite with some fine pieces of beef. The boor likewise informed me, that the Caffre cattle were uncommonly fat and in good condition; at which he was the more surprized, as they were not turned out till noon, and driven home very early. He, moreover, observed, that the Caffres fondled and talked to their cattle a good deal as they stood in the craal; doubtless, in the same manner as the Arabians do to their horses; which not a little contributes to making them thrive and rendering them brisk and lively, and at the same time more intelligent and tractable.

On the 3d we baited at noon near *Galge-bosch*, a little wood which was much frequented by lions, and still more by buffaloes. I was consequently more than ever in pain for my cattle, as, though there was very good pasturage on the spot, they had stolen away from it, and were  
missing

missing for several hours. In the mean time, we were apprehensive, that they had been scared away from the place by lions; but the fact was, that being very thirsty, they had strayed into a dale towards a pit full of very muddy water, where they were found. My Hottentots were of opinion, that cattle would find out water by the scent at a very great distance. I have heard some colonists say, that they suspected the same of the Hottentots, as they can find water upon occasion better than any colonists; but this cannot proceed from any thing else than the Hottentots greater assiduity in this point, and being more accustomed to wander about the fields, by which means they have acquired a particular skill in tracing out this necessary article of life from certain peculiarities of situation, and various other circumstances.

1775.  
December.

Indeed, we could get nothing fit to drink ourselves; and it was late at night before, thirsty as we were, we got to a land-spring; which, to our great vexation, we found dried up; so that there were only here and there in the mire a print of the buffaloes feet deeper than ordinary, in which we observed a little moisture. We therefore dug deeper holes with our hands, and waited with all the patience we were masters of, till the water was collected in them, and could be taken out by means of small basons. But besides that it was as thick as hasty-pudding, it had acquired so rank a taste from the buffaloes that had laid and wallowed in it, that even the Hottentots made wry faces at it; and our horses began to blow and snort at the strong buffalo-scent which affected their nostrils, even before they tasted the water. Our thirst, however, obliged

1775.  
December.



us frequently to sip a little of it just as it was; for when it was made into coffee or tea, it was still more intolerable. To search about elsewhere at this time when it was dark, was not only impossible but dangerous, on account of the lions. At break of day we discovered some traces which led us to the fountain-head of this land-spring, which had been closed up by the trampling of the buffaloes feet; we, therefore, made haste to dig it open again, when we found some more tolerable water to quench our thirst, which was actually insupportable. We frequently made use of sugar-candy as a tolerably good palliative for our thirst, during our travels in this hot and scorching climate; but this did not relieve us for any long time together. At 9 o'clock in the evening the thermometer was at 64, and the next day, being the 4th, at day-break, a good deal of dew having fallen, I found it 10 degrees lower.

We now pursued our journey, taking the lower road by *Van Staades-rivier*, which at that time was brackish and rather deep. For want of proper precaution in our Hottentots, our oxen turned back before they got half way over the river, and at the same time were thrown into confusion and disorder; so that it was a difficult matter, to save both them and the waggon from sinking. When we had got to the other side, and were baiting our cattle, we were visited by eighteen *Gonaquas*-Hottentots, from a craal which was just in the neighbourhood

This nation consisted of about two hundred people, who were all graziers, and at that time dwelt there in two separate villages. They are certainly a mixture of Hottentots and Caffres, as their language had an affinity with

with that of both these nations; but in their utterance, which was like that of human beings, in the *natural* blackness of their complexions, in the great strength and robustness of their limbs, and lastly in the height of their stature, they bore a greater resemblance to the Caffres, several of whom they likewise had at that time among them. The cloaks of the *Gonaquas* are likewise made of dressed cow-hides, like those of the Caffres. These cloaks are very supple; a quality that proceeds partly from being rubbed a good deal, which I myself saw performed with stones on the inside of them; and partly from the great quantity of grease, which, being mixed up with buckwheat powder, is rubbed into them. Both sexes are adorned with, and set a great value upon, brass rings, which they wear on their arms and legs, as well as brass plates of different sizes and figures, which are fastened in their hair and ears.

1775.  
December.

With respect to beads, which, speaking of in a general way, they call *sintela*, the small red ones are much more coveted than the rest; these are called *lenkitenka*, (See the specimen of the Caffre's language, which I have annexed at the conclusion of this journal.) The genuine Caffres had, in this point, exactly the same taste; but many of them had got ivory rings, of the thickness and breadth of about half an inch, and of such a size as to be strung upon the arms above the elbows. These, however, are worn only by the men; for which reason a Caffre, who had sold me his bracelets, seemed extremely distressed, saying, that he was now naked about the arms like a woman. Besides that both the Caffres and Gonaquas are very unfortunate

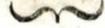
1775.  
December.

tunate beggars, they are likewise exceedingly unreasonable in their dealings, as when they make their payments, they are very apt to ask for a handsome present into the bargain.

Both the Gonaquas and Caffres differ from other Hottentots in this particular, that they make use of circumcision. This operation is performed on youths of different ages, as they are accustomed to wait till they can perform it on several at a time.

The Gonaquas women make use of almost the same kind of apron or veil as the Hottentot females do. The men are much more naked and less covered about this part than the males among the Hottentots, inasmuch as they cover with a little cap, or case, made of the skin of an animal, the extremities only of what modesty should teach them to conceal entirely. This socket, resembling the extremity of the thumb of a glove, is sometimes fastened with a small thong, or the sinew of an animal, to some strings of beads or leathern belts, which they wear for ornament's sake round their waists. Some individuals are seen with lions or buffaloes tails hanging on these same belts, as trophies of their courage in having killed these beasts.

By reason of the nakedness of these people, of which I have just been giving a description, it may be thought that they have as little modesty as covering: but the fact is, that very few of them could be induced, even by presents, to take off their little cases, in consequence of my wish to be perfectly convinced that they were circumcised. Indeed, I have been told by a farmer, that in Cafferland one does not unfrequently see even grown up girls without any covering

1775.  
December.

vering whatsoever; and that in certain dances, it constitutes part of the solemnity for the youths of both sexes to make such oblations to love in the presence of every one, as by the laws of decency and of civilized nations, are considered as sacred to the married state alone.

The Caffres seemed to me to resemble very much in appearance the *Mosambique* slaves, whom I had seen at the Cape; and, perhaps, these nations border upon each other; the former being probably descended from the latter, or the latter from the former.

The Gonaquas Hottentots, who at this time paid their respects to me, came chiefly with an intent to beg tobacco. They were all of them armed with one or more of the javelins, which they call *bassagais*, (vide Plate II. Vol. I. Fig. 1, 2.) as well as with short sticks, to which they gave the name of *kirris*. With one of these I saw a lad very nearly hit a sparrow-hawk in its flight. But they took so bad an aim, when they threw their javelins, that, though they tried very often, they could not hit a handkerchief which I had set up between two sticks, at the distance of twenty paces, by way of mark for them, and at the same time as a prize for him that should hit it. This want of dexterity, certainly proceeded from their having neglected to practise, as they lived too far from the Boshies-men Hottentots, and Caffres, and too near to the Christians, to be able to exercise any hostilities against the former, or to dare to do it against the latter. In the mean time they were very busy in examining narrowly each others javelins, and in feeling for their proper balance. They threw them, however, with a great deal of force; and, as I have been told by several

1775.  
December.



people, are able to pierce a man or a gazel through the body at the distance of twenty paces. I then shot at a sheet of paper with a fowling-piece, and as they appeared to be very much amazed at the holes that were made, and at the same time to be very desirous of keeping the paper, they took it without any ceremony, but shortly after offered to give it me again for a morsel of tobacco.

The *Gonaquas* Hottentots moreover were graziers, and in some sort tillers of the ground, as the Caffre nation is likewise said to be. The kind of corn which they sow, is the *bolcus sorghum*, which is likewise used in the south of Europe, and known to yield abundantly. The colonists call it *Caffer-corn*. The stalks shoot up to the height of a man, and as thick as a rush. They terminate in a pedicle or branchy ear, a foot and a half long, with seeds of about the same size as those of rice; two or three of these ears generally yield three quarters of a pint of corn. The time of sowing this seed, is said to be in August or September. But in the beginning of November, while I yet remained in *Sitscamma*, I saw it already fit for cutting, at a farmer's who set little store by it, giving it only to his cattle. The *Caffres* use to bruise this corn between stones, and make it into loaves, which they bake under the embers.

They mostly, however, use to ferment it with a certain root and water, till it produces a kind of inebriating liquor. They generally consume their whole stock, which, however, is not considerable, immediately in the autumn. The Caffre prince **PALOO**, whom the colonists called king **PHA-**

**RAOH,**

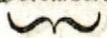
RAOH, is said to have killed himself with drinking this liquor.

1775.  
December.  
~~~~~

On several accounts we hastened our departure from hence. Our course was now to the north, over plain level fields, for the greater part covered with a dry arid grass to the height of about two feet. Our guide took us first to a well of lukewarm water, and afterwards at night to another pool of water, at the bottom of a river that was dried up. Both places were very acceptable to us as well as to our cattle, though the water was none of the best. Near this latter spot we took up our night's lodging.

It was not without difficulty, that we could collect wood enough round about the neighbourhood to boil our tea-kettle; and after all, we ran a great risk of having an end put to our whole expedition by a fire. A Hottentot, in looking for something with a piece of lighted wood, happened to set the dry grass on fire, which spread in it almost as if it had been oakum; so that had we not been very quick in stopping the progress of the flames, and moreover mutually assisted each other, we should soon have seen the whole district in one continued flame, and our waggon would have been entirely demolished in the conflagration, and blown up into the air; for there was not only a good deal of coom about it, but it also contained many inflammable matters; such as the sail-cloth tilt, dried herbs and paper, a cask full of spirits, and about twenty pounds weight of gunpowder. The wind blew hard from the south-west, the thermometer at eleven at night being 66, and the next day about dawn at 64, when we saddled our horses and put our oxen to the waggon. At nine we

1775.  
December.



got to little *Zwart-kops* river, and set off from thence about four in the afternoon, and at six o'clock arrived at great *Zwart-kops* river.

On the road we had seen large herds of the wild asses, called *quaggas*, and of *hart-beests*; as likewise, for the first time, six female buffaloes, with two young ones. These came from the sea-side, from whence our guide supposed they had been forced to make their retreat thus at noon, either on account of the lions or of flies.

We had not yet been able to get within reach of any game, so that our salted wether had hitherto been our only resource. This, in its skin bag, had already acquired a pretty strong haut gout, in consequence of the warmth of the weather. Mr. IMMELMAN, who was nice in his eating, and not used to put up with salted meat, especially when it was rather tainted, had, from our first setting out, it being now the fifth day, suffered much from hunger. For our small stock of bread would not at this time afford us above two biscuits a man per diem, each biscuit weighing about an ounce and a half.

At this *Zwart-kops* river, where we were now arrived, and intended to pass the night, we found two farmers had got in before us, who were come thither in order to get salt and hunt. Indeed, they had already shot several heads of game, which they had hung up in large slips and shreds on the bushes, waggons, and fences, in order to dry it in the sun, in the same manner as the Hottentots did the elephant's flesh near *Diep-rivier*, as I mentioned before, Volume I. page 313. From this flesh there was diffused round about the spot not only a crude and rank smell, but likewise a  
putrid

1775.  
December.

putrid stench from such parts of it as had arrived at the state of putrefaction; and the farmers wives and children, together with the Hottentots who had accompanied them, with a view to assist them as well as for their own pleasure, were employed in feasting upon it, and sleeping, and scaring away a number of birds of prey, which hovered round about them and over their heads, in order to steal away the flesh. This horrid spectacle of so many carnivorous human creatures, awakened in me a lively remembrance of the cannibals in *New Zealand*, and had like to have entirely taken away our appetites for a meat supper, so that we resolved to bear with our hunger that night as well as we could: but at last comes our guide, very opportunely, with the shoulder of a *hart-beest*, which we immediately cut, and dressed it in our pot with dripping; a dish which was called by the Hottentots by the name of the instrument (*Enora*, which means a knife,) with which it is cut in pieces. Our mouths watered at the sight of it, and we eat it with an excellent appetite, which was no longer spoiled by any reflections similar to those I have just mentioned.

On the 6th, at break of day, my guide and I took a ride, in order to cut up the *hart-beest* he had shot, and loaded one horse with as much as he could carry, in order to lay it up in the waggon, by way of making provision for the journey.

The *tulbagia*, a small hexandrous plant, called by LINNEUS after M. TULBAG, governor at the Cape, grew here in great abundance; though I had never before seen more than a single specimen of it, and that was on the road  
to

1775.  
December.

to *Zwellendam*. Here I likewise saw, for the first time, a small kind of onion, with spiral leaves; caught an *amphisbæna*; and drew up the description of a *cleome juncea*, which I have inserted in the *Acta Societ. Upsal.* Vol. III, page 192.

The farmers here, as well as some others, who were going to the Cape before me, were so obliging, as, at my request, to take with them the packet of herbs I had already collected; otherwise, I should not have had room enough in my waggon for all my collection.

The tide was very visible in this river. The wind blew strong from S. S. W. At noon the thermometer was 71 in the shade, and in the evening, after the moon was up, at 64. On the 7th, at half past five in the morning, the thermometer was at 52.

We now proceeded on our journey, going northwards, and in our way, a good mile and a half from the river, we met with the capital *Zout-pan*, or Salt-pan. By this name those places are distinguished, where there is a quantity of culinary salt produced.

This salt-pan was an extensive plain, covered over with a level and continued crust of salt, upon which, in several places, there stood a little water; so that there could not be a more natural resemblance of a frozen lake than this. This by consequence, being contrasted with the warmth of the weather and surrounding trees and flowers, would certainly at first sight have struck me with the greatest amazement, had I not been previously informed of the real cause of the phenomenon. Towards the sides the crust of salt was thin; and just there one might perceive, that it

was diffused over a loamy and clayey soil. But a little farther towards the middle, I found it was above two feet deep, without being able to discover the bottom of it, or any water underneath it. The colonists who worked here with poles, imagine that the crust of salt extends many fathoms below the surface.

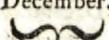
1775.  
December.



This salt-pan was about three miles in circumference, and of an oblong shape. After there have been several warm days together, there is formed in different places on the crust, a hoar frost, as it were, which is the finest and strongest salt, and is with great reason supposed by the colonists to exceed that of Lunenburgh. Indeed, the whole of it seems to be quite fine and pure: and it appears to me, and is allowed by others, to give a better taste to the butter and meat that is preserved in it, than any that comes from the other salt-pans to be met with in Africa; as *Saldanka-bay*, between *Zoet-melk* and *Gawrits* rivers, and in certain places behind the *Sneeuwbergs*, or snowy mountains.

My Hottentots were occupied in collecting a stock of the finest salt, as much as I thought we should want for the purpose of salting our meat, and such skins of animals as I might wish to preserve. In the mean time, I myself made a rich capture of many reptiles and insects hitherto unknown; some of which were stuck fast and dried up in the crystals of salt, while others were dying, or had just expired, in consequence of the viscid saline matter with which they were in contact. Many insects were likewise drowned in the clear water or briny liquid, which, after it had rained, was collected in certain places in the incrustation  
of

1775.  
December.



of salt. We were obliged to wade a good way into it; and although the salt dried and crystallized upon our legs and feet, till at night we found water to wash it off with, yet no ill effects ensued from it: a circumstance which I thought proper to mention, for the encouragement of such as may hereafter collect insects in this or other places of the same nature.

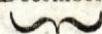
That peculiar insect, the *cimex paradoxus*, which I have described and given a drawing of in the Swedish Transactions, (Vol. XXXVIII. p. 235,) \*I discovered at this place, as at noon-tide I sought for shelter among the branches of a shrub from the intolerable heat of the sun. Though the air was now extremely still and calm, so as hardly to have shaken an aspen leaf, yet I thought I saw a little withered, pale, crumpled leaf, eaten as it were by caterpillars, fluttering from the tree. This appeared to me so very extraordinary, that I thought it worth my while suddenly to quit my verdant bower in order to contemplate it; and I could scarcely believe my eyes, when I saw a live insect, in shape and colour resembling the fragment of a withered leaf, with the edges turned up and eaten away, as it were, by caterpillars, and at the same time all over beset with prickles. Nature, by this peculiar form, has certainly extremely well defended and concealed, as it were in a mask, this insect from birds and its other diminutive foes; in all probability with a view to preserve it, and employ it for some important office in the system of her œconomy; a system with which we are too little acquainted, in general too little investigate, and, in every part of it, can never sufficiently admire with

\* See likewise Plate VII. of this Volume.

that

that respect and veneration which we owe to the great Author of nature and Ruler of the universe.

1775.  
December.



At night we came to *Kuga*, a little river, the water of which was brackish; but some good and fresh water was found in a well hard by it. Here likewise we had a hasty glimpse of two hares, which seemed to resemble the ordinary hares of Europe.

My companion, who was subject to a spitting of blood, happened here to be much troubled with this complaint; a complaint to which the animal diet he had been accustomed to during the whole journey, together with the fatigue he had undergone, and the scorching heat of the sun, had necessarily disposed him. Bleeding, together with a little saltpetre and the water from this spring, were the only means, (and those not ill adapted to the purpose,) which we fortunately had at hand for his recovery in this desert place. Upon the whole, I took as much care of him as I possibly could on an open plain, with no other canopy than the sky. The fineness of the weather, together with the coolness of the night, and above all his utter aversion to all sickness, circumstanced as we were, I believe did not a little contribute towards his speedy recovery. The next morning, however, when, in order to make a trial of his strength, he walked a few hundred paces from our baiting-place, his life was in still greater and more imminent danger. This was from a herd of young cattle, which, by way of experiment, had been left in this place, under the care of a slave, and being at that time unused to the sight of any human creature besides, had like to have gored him to death. These fierce animals then, making a semi-

1775.  
December.

circle about Mr. IMMELMAN, advanced continually nearer and nearer to him, so that he was obliged to retire backwards. According to the old saying, "a curst cow has short horns;" this we found in a manner verified on this occasion, for a heifer without horns was the foremost and most vicious of them all. I therefore hastened thither with my loaded piece, with an intention of discharging it among them, and at the same time, repeating the firing as often as I was able, to cover our retreat. In the mean time, however, it came into my head first to try a milder method, which I had heard of, when in Europe, as a certain defence against the attacks of wild and vicious bulls; and which, in short, was no more than to hold your hat before your face, and on a sudden uncover it at intervals, at the same time, with a quick pace, advancing upon them, and standing still alternately. With this method we so far succeeded, that the heifer without horns, as well as the rest of the herd, was very much scared. Just after this, one of my Hottentots was attacked by the same herd, but escaped them by the lightness of his heels. Afterwards, on our returning this way home, we were informed, that the owner of the herd had been obliged to remove it from hence, as a lion had begun to infest these parts.

Two hartbeests came likewise this morning early very near our waggon in order to survey us, but unluckily just at that time we had no gun ready charged. At 12 o'clock I found the thermometer, when placed in the shade under our waggon, at 83.

In the afternoon we set off again, directing our course to the east, and came to a place on the lower part of *Zon-  
dags-rivier,*

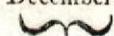
*dags-rivier*, known by the name of *t'Nuka t'Kamma*, which, I believe, signifies *grassy water*. We here found the recent traces of a lion, and took proper precautions against it, in case we should go down to the river. In the evening we likewise thought we saw in the thickets an elephant at a good distance off. These animals are said to assemble in great numbers in the thorny thickets, made by the *guaijacum afrum* and the *mimosa nilotica*, which afford them a kind of asylum.

1775.  
December.



We now began to find the Guinea hen (*numida meleagris*) in these parts. They kept together in flocks, and consequently were very shy and cautious. I observed they flew low and straight forwards, like our partridges. They appeared to get the greatest part of their food on the ground, but at night they perched together up in the trees; so that I once killed six of them at one shot, and several more were wounded, which, however, escaped in the dark. Their flesh was dry, and much inferior to that of the common hen.

Of *Sunday-rivier*, which at this part made a great many windings, the banks to us were extremely high and steep, and indeed quite perpendicular; consisting, to all appearance, merely of the same dry and clayey materials as the surface of the earth exhibited on our side. In the upper part, the bank appeared to be quite plain and level; but it is difficult to conjecture, whence this dissimilarity in the banks of the river should arise, unless one of them had been thrown up by an earthquake; or that the river by degrees had made its way to the side of some flat hill level at top, and undermined it, till the part that hung over fell down, when it would necessarily be quite level and per-

1775.  
December.

pendicular; as, in fact, it is at present. At night we had rain, with a south-west wind.

On the 9th at five o'clock in the morning, when we departed from hence, the thermometer was at 62; and at half past three in the afternoon we arrived at *Zondags-rivier's-drift*. We had, nevertheless, gone out of our road on purpose to chase two buffaloes, one of which made its escape though wounded, and the other leaped into a close thicket, where it was neither adviseable, nor indeed possible to follow it. In the mean time, to my great astonishment, we could see from the top of the bushes the animal piercing through the thickest of the wood with the greatest ease, just as if he was merely running through a rye-field. We likewise saw a *Koedoe* (the *antilope strepsiceros* of PALLAS.)

Soon after our arrival at this part of *Sunday-rivier*, we were waited upon by three old Hottentots, who seemed as if they came to pry into our business in those parts. They were, properly speaking, of the race of *Bosbies-men*, though of the more civilized sort, who, even in their own language, distinguished themselves by the name of *good Bosbies-men*; probably from the circumstance of their grazing a few cattle, and not living by rapine like others of their countrymen. My guide explained their business to me, which was to beg tobacco, and to complain of their distressed situation; the farmers having been with them, and having carried off all their young people, so that they were now left alone in their old age to look after themselves and their cattle. I ordered my interpreter to tell them in reply, that we, as they

they might very well perceive, were no farmers, and still  
 less kidnappers.

1775.  
 December.



I must here inform the reader, that many of the ignorant Hottentots and Indians not having been able to form any idea of the Dutch East-India Company and the board of direction, the Dutch from the very beginning in India, politically gave out the company for one individual powerful prince, by the christian name of *Jan* or *John*. This likewise procured them more respect, than if they had actually been able to make the Indians comprehend, that they were really governed by a company of merchants. On this account I ordered my interpreter to say farther, that we were the children of *Jan Company*, who had sent us out to view this country, and collect plants for medical purposes. I likewise bid him give them to understand, that we had an amazing quantity of powder and ball, together with five stand of fire-arms, as they themselves saw; that we intended to shoot a great deal of game, and it would be a great pity if they could not come along with us, and partake of the abundant spoil of flesh, which would otherwise be suffered to lie as food for the birds and beasts of prey.

This story, patched up in haste, with a mixture of truth and falsehood, seemed to have made a deep impression on these Hottentots. It was, indeed, touching them in a tender part, to talk to them of so much meat, and to pity their emaciated state, without letting them observe, however, that it was more for my own advantage than theirs, that I was so desirous of their company. That same night then, there not only came to me three middle-aged  
 men

1775.  
December.

men to offer their services, but I even saw the three old fellows above-mentioned, with great eagerness and diligence preparing their shoes, in order to be ready the next morning to follow us in our expedition.

Having given my guide to understand, how strange this conduct of the Hottentots appeared to me, when I compared it with the account they had given of themselves at first, at the same time that from this circumstance I apprehended they would prove false; besides, that I doubted, whether we should be able to find food for so many as six of them, we being five in number ourselves, which in all made eleven persons; he replied, "Pshaw! this is always the Hottentot's custom to lye the first word they speak; and as for victuals, we shall get game enough to eat, I'll warrant you." The latter part of his reply gave me some satisfaction; for as to the Hottentots custom of lying at the first word, I was pretty even with them in that respect, with my pretended relationship to *Jan Company*.

On the 10th in the morning we set out on our journey, being in all eleven persons. The six newly-arrived Hottentots did not understand a word of Dutch, on which account we were obliged to make use of the three others as interpreters; though, in general, we made them understand us pretty well by signs, and some few Hottentot words we had learnt the meaning of, and could ourselves pronounce with the proper clack against the roof of the mouth. Still, however, Mr. IMMELMAN and I could not be otherwise than anxious about the procuring of food for such a number of people, when, in case of a scarcity, we expected to hear them grumbling against their *Moses and Aaron*,

*Aaron*, who had enticed them into the desert; for the buffalo which we had chased the day before got away from us, though the bushes in more than one place were stained with his blood. Upon this, however, we soon observed, that our volunteer corps, the six last Hottentots, made no difficulty of eating, without any preparation whatever, the ill-tasted beans of a wild shrub, (the *guaiacum afrum.*) I thought I could shew the Hottentots another substance likewise, which might serve to appease their hunger in case of necessity. This was the *gum arabic*, which they might gather in many spots thereabouts from the *mimosa nilotica*; but this was a species of food very well known to them, and which they had often tried. When in want of other provisions, the Boshies-men are said to live upon this for many days together.

1775.  
December.

This day I saw, for the first time, a herd of *bosch-varkens*, or, as they are likewise called, *wilde-varkens*, (wood-swine, or wild-swine) in their wild uncultivated state; for I had hitherto only seen one of this species of animals in the menagerie at the Cape. It was confined there with a strong iron chain, as it was very wild and vicious. M. PALLAS, who in his *Spicil. Zool. Fasc. II. p. 11.* and *Miscel. Zool. p. 16.* has described this animal by the name of *aper Æthiopicus*, and given a figure of it, farther informs us in his *Spicil. Zool. Fasc. XI. Additam. p. 84.* that one of them killed the keeper of the menagerie at Amsterdam. One may easily conceive that this creature is very dangerous, if one only takes notice of its large tusks, (vide Tab. V. l. c.) These are four in number. Two of them proceed from the upper jaw, and turn upwards like a horn, consist-

3

ing,

1775.  
December.

ing, however, of a fine ivory-like substance. In a head of this animal salted and dried, which I gave to the Royal Academy of Sciences in Sweden, the tusks or horns stand nine inches out of the jaws, and measure full five inches in circumference at the base. The two other tusks, which come from the lower jaw, project but three inches from the mouth, being flat on the inside, and corresponding with another plain surface similar to it in the upper tusks. These the beasts make use of not so much for biting, as for goring and butting with. A little pig of this species, which I afterwards caught at *Visch-rivier*, and had it tied up, thinking to bring it alive along with me, had already got this trick, so that I was soon obliged to let it be killed. It was terribly vicious, and quick in all its motions; and though at that time not absolutely dangerous, yet my Boshies-men were very much afraid of it. "We had rather, said they, attack a lion on the plain, than an African wild boar; for this, though much smaller, comes rushing on a man as swift as an arrow, and throwing him down snaps his legs in two, and rips up his belly before he can get to strike it, and kill it with his javelin." The dwelling-place of this same species of wild boar, to which the avenues seemed to be very narrow, is under-ground. I have been told indeed, that the *bosch-varkens* go down into them backwards, and place themselves there in a row one behind the other; but this is not very likely, for probably these passages are widened lower down. Thus much, however, is certain, that people do not dare to attack them in their holes, for fear of their coming out on them on a sudden.

The

1775.  
December.

The body of this animal is small in comparison with its head, a conformation which facilitates its burrowing and living under-ground. Neither would it be adviseable for a man on horseback to approach too near or to hunt this animal, as it will often turn round on a sudden, and striking with its horns at the horse's legs, afterwards kill both him and his rider. This day I pursued several pigs with the old fows, with a view to shoot one of them, but in vain; nevertheless, the chase of them afforded me peculiar pleasure. On a sudden the heads of the old ones, which were before of a tolerable size, seemed to have grown still larger and more shapeless than they were before; which momentary and wonderful change astonished me so much the more, as my hard riding over a country full of bushes and pits, had hitherto prevented me from giving sufficient attention to the manner in which it was brought about. The secret, however, consisted in this; each of the old ones, while they were making off, took a pig in its mouth; a circumstance that also explained to me another subject of my surprize, which was, that all the pigs which I was just before chasing along with the old ones, vanished all on a sudden. But in this action we find a kind of unanimity among the wood-swine, in which they resemble the tame species, and which they have in a greater degree than many other animals. It is likewise very astonishing, that the pigs should be carried about in this manner between such large tusks as those of their mothers, without being hurt, or crying out in the least. I saw the same done, however, on two other occasions, as I was chasing them. The cry of these

1775.  
December.

young ones was like that of our common pigs, as I found in some we afterwards caught.

I have it from pretty good authority, that one JOSHUA DE BOER, a farmer in Camdebo, had succeeded in obtaining a brood of these wood-swine, which had been coupled with the ordinary sort; but as the person who told it me had not sufficiently informed himself concerning the circumstances, I could not get any farther insight into the matter. This experiment having failed in Holland, as mentioned by M. PALLAS, is no reason why it should not succeed better in other places. I observed a peculiar circumstance on my return home through *Lange-kloof*, which was, that two tame pigs at a farmer's in that province, not only went down on their knees to graze, but even successively changed this posture to that of standing, with the greatest ease. This faculty the animal seems to have acquired in its subterraneous caverns, and it proceeds from the creature's neck being too short to be conveniently lowered to the ground.

The African wood-swine are likewise distinguished from any other species of swine, by four peculiar caruncles or excrescences. Two of these are broad and flat, being about two inches over both in length and breadth, and are placed at the distance of a hand's breadth just before and underneath the eyes. The other two are spherical, an inch high, and are situated on the nose at three inches distance, in a straight line from behind the jaws. The tail is flattened at the tip; and this appendage they never fail, either old or young, to hold quite erect in the air during

1775.  
December.

during the whole time that they are pursued. With respect to taste, I found the flesh very much resemble that of the ordinary pig; but never observed the animals themselves to be of that dark hue ascribed to them by M. PALLAS, and which M. VOSMAER has given them in the coloured figures he has published; those that I saw being only of a bright yellow-colour, like the greatest part of our domestic swine. Neither did I hear any body in the colony call them *baartloopers*, as M. VOSMAER pretends they are termed: though, on the other hand, I have frequently heard the Hottentots call them *kaunaba*, and have likewise been informed by them, that these creatures are fond of wallowing in the mire, and are wont to grub after the root of a shrub of the mesembryanthemum kind, which they call *da-t'kai*.

At night we came to the upper part of *r'Kurenoi*, or Little Sunday-river. We fixed our resting-place at the distance of a few gun-shots from a clan of *bastards*, or *Hottentot-Caffres*, who are the offspring of the mixture of both these nations. They chiefly spoke the Caffre language, but had neither the large lips, robust, and easy form, nor the black complexion of the *Caffres*. They appeared to me not so swarthy as my own Hottentots, and I suppose, that they originate only from a set of people, who having acquired some cattle by servitude among the *Caffres*, had formed themselves into this society. The iris of their eyes was of a very dark brown hue, and almost, if not quite as dark as the pupil. They had a great quantity of cattle, and seemed to live very happily in their way.

1775.  
December.



way. As soon as ever they had taken their cattle up from pasture they milked them; an occupation they intermixed with singing and dancing.

We seldom see such happiness and contentment as seems to be indicated by this festive custom, in a handful of people totally uncultivated, and subsisting in their original savage state, in the midst of a perfect desert. Mr. IMMELMAN accompanied me, in order to behold with his own eyes the real archetype of that state of pastoral felicity, which the poets are continually occupied in painting and describing. We announced ourselves here likewise as being the children of the company, and were received by them with a friendly simplicity and homely freedom, which, however, by no means lessened them in our thoughts as men. They presented us with milk, and danced at our request; at the same time giving us to understand, that our fame, as being a singular people with plaited hair, as well as simplers and viper-catchers, had reached them long before our arrival.

We were spectators of their country dances, in which there was very little either of agility or art. While their feet were employed in a kind of stamping and moderately slow movement, every one of them between whiles made several small gentle motions with a little stick, which they held in their hands. The simplicity which prevailed in their dances was equally conspicuous in their singing, the following being all the words used to the tune of one of their country dances, which I took down in writing at the time, *Maijema, Maijema, bub, bub, bub.* The former

part of this was chaunted repeatedly *piano* by an elderly matron, who was answered by the young men and maids in the latter words, sung *staccato* by way of chorus. It must be confessed, that this concert was not well adapted to satisfy a nice ear; but however, it inspired a certain degree of joy and chearfulness, and was by no means disagreeable.

1775.  
December.

They had another kind of dance, which consisted in taking each other by the hand, and dancing gently in a circle round about one or more persons, who were placed in the middle of the ring, and whose movements were brisker and quicker; yet we could not help laughing, though at the same time we were not a little hurt, to see the poor infants pop their heads alternately in and out of the bags hanging at the backs of their mothers, who were likewise dancing; so that we had great reason to fear that they would break their necks. But what was still more ridiculous was, that these little Hottentots were far from shewing any dislike to this treatment; but, on the contrary, were so well pleased with it, that they sufficiently shewed their displeasure by crying, when their mothers, who were soon tired with carrying them on their backs, wanted to set them down, or go out of the dance.

Besides the pleasures which these daily dances may be supposed to afford them, they have at their greater festivals the more delightful enjoyment of voluptuous love, which, at those times, the youth of both sexes, by their laws, have full opportunity given them to pursue. For it is said, that the unmarried part of the company, in the  
very

1775.  
December.

very middle of the dance, withdraw to a private place in couples successively and at different intervals, without giving the least subject of offence and scandal, and without having any occasion to blush when they return again to the company. I have purposely said only, that *opportunity is given them* for this purpose; as I could not learn, whether their laws, together with the opportunity, allowed the action itself, which, as I have mentioned above, the Caffres permit themselves to transact in the presence of the whole company that is dancing.

This remissness of their laws, however, in allowing them opportunities of this kind, seems to be in direct opposition to the rigorous strictness of these same laws in the following particular. Any young woman whatsoever, who, after such dance, shall prove pregnant, shall be put to death, together with her paramour; unless, which indeed is generally the case, the oldest people in the clan mitigate the punishment, by commuting it into a perpetual union; ordering them moreover, to forfeit an ox or a cow to feast the whole community with, by way of atonement for their crime. In this latter article of the mitigation of the decree, it is not difficult to perceive the selfish motives of the society; but it is, perhaps, not so easy from this strange edict itself, to trace out the intention of the primitive institutor of it. Besides, who could have supposed, that among these artless herdsmen another custom should prevail, which should sacrifice the virtue and innocence of the fair sex to the interested views of a parent or guardian? A Hottentot, who at that time dwelt in those parts, assured me,

me, that on any Hottentot's paying a stipulated price to a girl's relations, she was obliged to sleep with him; but that neither did the law ordain, nor had there been any instance known, that a young woman should be delivered up into the arms of a Christian, or white man, on any consideration whatever. The Hottentot added, that for his part, he had not entered into any union here of the kind, as for two, or at most three nights enjoyment, it would have cost him the price of a cow; a price, he said, that would have made him dearly repent his bargain.

1775.  
December.



This Hottentot, who explained to me the circumstances I have just been mentioning, and at the same time gave me many other curious anecdotes and relations, I had the greater reason to believe, as he had the appearance of being a serious and discreet man, and indeed was known to be such by my guide. He had been brought up in a village near the Christians, in the service of whom he had always been; and at this time, with the assistance of the bastard or Caffre Hottentots belonging to this craal, he had caught, and then had in his custody, three old Boshies-women with their children, with an intention to take them home to his master for slaves. His master had given him a gun, but he was at that time quite out of powder, consequently he was put to his shifts for food, both for himself and his captives. I therefore gave him some powder, as I considered, that, so far from having any effect in riveting the chains of these unhappy people, it would rather tend to make them fit lighter. He told me likewise, that his female captives had threatened to bewitch him; but that he

1775.  
December.

he had no faith in witchcraft, and had an equal contempt for their menaces and their savage manners.

A bastard Hottentot, who had accompanied him in this expedition, had been wounded in the shoulder with a poisoned arrow. The poison had been sucked out of the wound immediately. The tumour had not absolutely a bad appearance; yet the wounded man was by no means well, and was himself in doubt whether he should get over it or not. Nothing was laid upon it but the bruised leaves of the *Hottentot fig-tree*.

They keep their milk in leathern sacks, of which I have given a description above, never eating it till it is curdled; but the vessels they milked it into were baskets of a peculiar kind, composed of roots plaited together so curiously, and in so close a manner, that they would not only hold milk but even water. These vessels would be as neat as they are light, if the Hottentots did not always neglect to wash them. Indeed, most of these baskets had acquired such an appearance from the milk being encrusted upon them, as at first induced us to suppose that they were smeared with cow-dung, in order to make them hold the liquor the better. But I have since tried baskets, that were quite new and clean, particularly one that I had brought home with me, and found, that without any kind of daubing, they did not leak in the least. These milk-pails, or baskets, are mostly of the shape of that delineated in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 1. holding from a pint and a half to four gallons; and besides the advantage of being very light, they have likewise that of their rims being sufficiently pliable.

No

1775.  
December.

No cows of the African breed, whether they belong to the colonists or Hottentots, will suffer themselves to be milked, without their hind legs being first tied together; as they otherwise never fail either to kick the persons who milk them, or get away from them. The interpreter, I have been just speaking of, desired me, therefore, to observe here, as being an uncommon circumstance, that several of the cows belonging to these bastard Caffres, allowed themselves to be milked without being tied up. I likewise remarked, that the cows here, whether tied up or loose, were, for the most part, too shy and wild to suffer themselves to be milked, except their calves were with them, and had previously sucked them a little. The herdsmen themselves in this place were also desirous that I should take notice, as a matter of curiosity, of the manner in which a cow, who had brought forth a dead calf, was at length induced to be milked. The artifice used for this purpose, consisted in letting her always put her nose in the skin of her dead calf just before she was milked.

Circumcision is practised by these Hottentots as well as by the *Gonaquas* and *Caffres*, and is performed upon youths at that period of life, when, to use their own expression, they become half-men. Yet they generally suit the time so, as to have an opportunity of performing the operation upon several at once.

The next morning, being the 11th, we were waked by the Hottentots singing and dancing; and with this rejoicing, or, at least, appearance of happiness and delight, it seems that this simple race of people always begin and con-

1775.  
December.

clude the day. We likewise paid a visit to them that morning, but soon found it more prudent to return to our waggon again; as a great number of them now came to pay their respects to us, and at the same time became more troublesome than ever, by importuning us for tobacco. I do not know whether I should look upon it as a mark of the greatest simplicity, or as a witty and ingenious compliment in one of them, who desired my interpreter to tell me, that he had never seen a waggon before, and therefore wished me to inform him, whether mine had grown up in the same state in which he then saw it.

In the mean while, in order to obtain a truce from their tiresome practice of pestering us for tobacco, we excited their astonishment by shewing them our watches. I even attempted to acquire some respect from these people, as not being without some knowledge of magic. This, it may well be supposed, did not proceed from any misplaced ambition, but rather from motives of prudence, and with a view by this means of curbing their growing desires, which might probably terminate in some bold attempts on the iron-work of our waggon, &c. For this purpose I bid these Hottentots, and at the same time my own, endeavour to take some quicksilver with their fingers out of a parcel of it which I had brought with me. The various attempts they made still proving abortive, excited in them the greatest astonishment, and proved an inexhaustible subject to them of conversation and laughter. Afterwards, to their utter amazement, I took out several globules of quicksilver,

silver, having previously, unperceived by them, rubbed my fingers over with tallow. Neither did I omit astonishing these simple swains, with the wonderful magnetic properties of the needle belonging to my compass. I remember, indeed, having read somewhere of a certain great commander, who, being in America, in order to intimidate the natives, and make them behave peaceably, set fire to some brandy, which they took for water, at the same time threatening to set fire to their rivers and burn them up; but I had no occasion to have recourse to extremities, as the miracles I had before performed, seemed already to have deterred them from attempting any hostilities.—It was particularly from these bastard Caffres, that I got the Caffre words, which are to be found at the end of this volume.

1775.  
December.



The government of this community, was said to be chiefly vested in a man, who at the same time was pointed out to me as being the richest among them. He held this office by inheritance, and appeared to be a sober, sedate, middle aged man. His manner discovered no particular pre-eminence or authority; on the contrary, he had more trouble with the milking than any of the rest. So that riches, even among the uncultivated Hottentots, are attended with uneasiness and trouble.

There was another person here, whose busy manner, continual chattering and gesticulation, plainly denoted, that he was a man in office, and of some consequence. In fact, he was the forcerer (as they term it) of the community; and consequently, by virtue of his office, was master of the

1775.  
December.



ceremonies, high priest, phyfician, and cow-leach; and of himself, independently of any office whatever, an arch Charlatan; who, by his drolleries and ridiculous antic gestures, endeavoured to distinguish himself from the rest, and was perpetually exciting the young people to dance. As I was not ignorant, that the Charlatans in the better informed and more enlightened societies of Europe, frequently, by means of their despicable talents, thrust themselves into offices of the highest importance and the acquisition of riches, I do not in the least wonder to hear, that this fellow, besides being universally respected, was in possession of a greater stock of cattle than any one among them. I was likewise informed, that for delivering a cow, which had a difficult labour, he usually had an heifer for his fee; and that at every feast, the best and fattest piece fell to his share.

○ In the northern climates I had been used to see fox tails worn to keep out the cold. Here I saw, for the first time, the tails of the jackall, or African fox, made use of in warm weather; as the Hottentots wiped the sweat off their faces with them, for this purpose carrying them about with them fixed upon short sticks. Having now sufficiently contemplated the manners of these people, we proceeded on our journey; and, as in the mean time our guide had given us the slip, and shot an old, lean, and lousy buffalo, we made a trip to the place where it lay, and loaded our waggon with the best part of the meat, leaving the remainder to the bastard Hottentots, the birds of prey, and the hyænas. The lice that we found upon this buffalo, were of a new species;

species; (see the description, together with a drawing of them, in *Mem. sur les Insectes*, Tom. VII.)

1775.  
December.



We afterwards drove higher up, along *Kuranoi-rivier*, and found the water there almost motionless and brackish. We had the tops and grass of the reeds growing in this little stream cut off, to fodder our horses with at night. At night, the wolves which probably had got scent of the meat in our waggon, gave us to understand by their howlings, that they were not far from us.

## C H A P. XI.

*Journey from little Sundays-river to Boshies-mans-river.*

1775.  
December.

ON the 12th our guide took us first to the east and then to the south-east, over a champain country, that we might bait and water our cattle at noon. This we did at a land spring, which had been very much trampled under foot by the buffaloes, and which had no outlet. But at the distance of an hour's ride from thence, we found better water, and came to a resolution to put up the following night not far from the spot, in order to be ready in the morning to look out after the buffaloes; as it is in places just like these, that they particularly come out into the meadows to graze; but, on the contrary, in the day time, on account of the heat, they generally choose to keep in the woods.

It had not been dark two hours, before we heard the roaring of lions, which at times appeared to be pretty near us. This was the first time that I had heard this kind of music, and, as there were several performers, it might be properly called a concerto of lions. They continued roaring the whole night, whence my guide concluded, that they

they had assembled on the plains in order to copulate, and carry on their amours, by fighting and attacking each other after the manner of cats. 1775.  
December.

To describe the roaring of the lion as nearly as I can, I must inform the reader, that it consisted in a hoarse inarticulate sound, which at the same time seemed to have a hollowness in it, something like that proceeding from a speaking trumpet. The sound is between that of a German U and an O, being drawn to a great length, and appearing as if it came from out of the earth; at the same time that, after listening with the greatest attention, I could not exactly hear from what quarter it came. The sound of the lion's voice does not bear the least resemblance to thunder, as M. DE BUFFON, Tom. IX. p. 22, from the Voyage of BOULLAYE LE GOUZ, affirms it does. In fact, it appeared to me to be neither peculiarly piercing nor tremendous; yet from its slow prolonged note, joined with nocturnal darkness, and the terrible idea one is apt to form to one's self of this animal, it made one shudder, even in such places, as I had an opportunity of hearing it in with more satisfaction, and without having the least occasion for fear. We could plainly perceive by our animals, when the lions, whether they roared or not, were reconnoitering us at a small distance. For in that case the hounds did not dare to bark in the least, but crept quite close to the Hottentots; and our oxen and horses sighed deeply, frequently hanging back, and pulling slowly with all their might at the strong straps with which they were tied up to the waggon. They likewise laid themselves down upon the ground and stood up alternately, appearing as if they did not know what to do with themselves:

1775.  
December.

elves; and, indeed, I may say, just as if they were in the agonies of death. In the mean time, my Hottentots made the necessary preparations, and laid each of them their javelins by the side of them. We likewise loaded all our five pieces, three of which we distributed among those of our Hottentots who spoke Dutch.

Fires and fire-brands are universally reckoned, and, indeed, were said by my Hottentots, to be a great preservative and defence against lions and other wild beasts; they could, however, themselves mention instances, in which the lion had leaped forward to the fire, and carried off some one of them, who had been sitting round it and warming themselves. The animal too has sometimes taken its prey to so short a distance, that the poor wretch's companions have plainly heard it champing and chewing his flesh. The Hottentots desired us who were placed in the waggon, not to be in too great haste to fire in case a lion should take a leap among them, for fear that in the dark we might at the same time hurt some of them. They had concerted matters so, that some of them should rather attempt to pierce him through with their hassagais or spears, while at the same instant the others should endeavour to cling about its legs.

They looked upon it as a certain fact, and I have since heard the same from others, that a lion does not immediately kill the person he has got under him, unless he is excited to do so by the resistance he meets with. At length, however, it is reported, the royal tyrant gives the *coup de grace* on the victim's breast with a hideous roar. On this occasion I must do my Hottentots the justice to say, that they

they did not shew the least fear; though they conceived the old and commonly-received notion to be absolutely true, that both lions and tigers would attack a slave or a Hottentot, before they will a colonist or a white man. Consequently, Mr. IMMELMAN and I had no such great reason to be in fear for our own persons, unless more than one lion should come to attack us, or that we should discharge our pieces too precipitately and miss him; for in such a case, the lion always rushes on the marksman. In another respect, however, we that lay in the waggon and at a distance from the fire, were most liable to receive a visit from the lions; or at least to see our horses and oxen, which were tied up to the waggon, seized by them. Otherwise, for the singularity of the spectacle, I should have been glad to have seen an attack of this kind, if it had not cost me more than a couple of my oxen. In such a case, indeed, my horses would probably first have fallen a prey to this rapacious animal, as it is generally supposed, that the lion gives them the preference.

1775.  
December.



Among our oxen there was one which at this time, as well as since upon other similar occasions, appeared extremely disquieted and restless. It had besides, a singular and astonishing habit of making an inward noise, which cannot be described; and this was the case likewise with the stone-horse, in his own peculiar way. This, in fact, was sufficient to make us keep ourselves in readiness, though it happened not to be absolutely necessary: however, we quickly got accustomed to it, and several times laid ourselves down to sleep, void of care, leaving our beasts to fight on unheeded. It is, indeed, a wonderful circumstance, that

1775.  
December.



the brute creation should have been taught merely by nature to be in dread of the lion; for our horses and oxen were all from places, where I am certain they could have no knowledge of this dreadful adversary of theirs: so that in this we must admire the bounty of providence, which, while it has sent such a tyrant as the lion amongst the animal creation, has likewise taught them to discern and distinguish it with trembling and horror.

One would suppose, that the roaring of the lion would prove serviceable to the other animals, as being a warning for them to betake themselves to flight; but as when he roars, according to all report, he puts his mouth to the ground, so that the sound is diffused equally all over the place, without, as we have already mentioned, its being possible to hear from what quarter it comes, the animals are intimidated and scared to such a degree, as to fly about backwards and forwards in the dark to every side; in consequence of which, some of them may easily chance to run on to the very spot from whence the tremendous sound actually proceeds, and which they meant most to avoid.

A writer, in other respects extremely rational, who styles himself *Officier du Roi*, asserts, in his *Voyage a l'Isle de France*, &c. p. 63, that in Africa there are found whole armies of lions; a fact of which, he says, he was informed, by three persons of consequence in the government, whose names he mentions.

This author, as well as his informers, and those, if such there be, who have given any credit to him, may be easily made to conceive the palpable absurdity of the idea by this single consideration, that to support armies of lions,

it

it would require a greater quantity of quadrupeds and game, as it is called, than is to be found not only in Africa, but in all the world besides. In order to confirm this assertion, we may appeal to a witty observation made by the Indians, and reported by LAFITAU. "It is a very fortunate circumstance, said they, that the Portuguese are as few in number as they are cruel in their dispositions; just as it is with the tigers and lions with respect to the rest of the animal creation, or otherwise there would soon be an end of us men."

1775.  
December.



With regard to the testimonies of the persons of consequence here appealed to, I must beg leave to observe, that we may at any time, without the least hesitation, call in question any position which militates against common sense. Besides, in the East-Indies, knowledge and the appearance of truth are not always absolutely inseparable from authority. I myself have heard a man belonging to the council at the Cape, relate to strangers the most ridiculous absurdities concerning the country in which he lived. Stories of this kind often originate from the farmers and yeomen, who come from a great distance, and who often find their account in amusing their rulers with pleasing tales; which, the more wonderful they are, with the greater avidity they are swallowed. Another source of these false reports is in the depraved disposition of mankind, who are very prone to impose as much as they can on the credulity of the weak and simple. Admitting it to be true, that the Romans introduced into their public spectacles a great number of lions, which, indeed, they might easily collect from the extensive tracts of country they possessed in Africa and Asia,

1775.  
December.

Asia, yet it never can be consonant either with truth or probability, that armies of lions should be found in these quarters of the globe, where only, according to the very probable position of M. DE BUFFON, they exist. So that when a later writer, the Abbé DE MANET, in his description of the northern part of Africa, affirms, that the same kind of lion is likewise found in America, we may safely consider this merely as a hasty assertion, which is not warranted either by the authority of others or by his own experience: indeed, this author's testimony is much more to be credited when he informs us, that the "Negroes in the northern parts of Africa, are used to catch lions in pits, but do not dare to eat any of the flesh, for fear lest the other lions should be revenged on them." In this particular, however, I have not found the Hottentots or inhabitants of the southern parts of Africa equally superstitious, as they told me, that they ate the flesh of lions, and looked upon it to be both good and wholesome. They likewise informed me, that the lions as well as hyænas, had been formerly much bolder than they are at present, as they used to seize them at night, and carry them off from their cottages: at the same time they assured me, that a lion that had once tasted human flesh would never after, if he could help it, prey upon any other. They added, that for the same reason they were obliged to fix benches up in trees to sleep on; so that they could not so readily be caught unawares by the lions, and might likewise the easier defend themselves when they were attacked by them.

So that, in fact, they were obliged to acknowledge, that with the assistance of the Christians and their fire-arms, they

1775.  
December.

they are at present much less exposed to the ravages of this fierce animal; while, on the other hand, I could not but agree with them, that the colonists themselves were a much greater scourge to them than all the wild beasts of their country put together; as the Hottentot nations, since the arrival of the colonists in this part of the world, have found themselves reduced to a much narrower space in their possessions, and their numbers very much decreased.

In these times, at least, the lion does not willingly attack any animal openly, unless provoked, or extremely hungry; in which latter case he is said to fear no danger, and to be repelled by no resistance. The method in which the lion takes his prey, is almost always to spring or throw himself on it, with one vast leap from the place of his concealment; yet, if he chances to miss his leap, he will not, as the Hottentots unanimously assured me, follow his prey any farther; but, as though he were ashamed, turning round towards the place where he lay in ambush, slowly, and step by step, as it were, measures the exact length between the two points, in order to find how much too short of, or beyond the mark he had taken his leap. One of these animals, however, was once known to pursue an elk-antelope with the greatest eagerness and ardour, without any one getting to see the end of the chase. It is singular, that the foxes in Europe, according to M. COLLONN's *Hist. Nouv. de l'Univers*, Tom. IV. p. 20. when they have leaped short of their mark, and their prey has got away from them, measure the length of their leap, in the same manner as the lion does.

It

1775.  
December.

It is particularly near rivers and springs, that the lion finds it best answers his purpose to lie in wait. Any animal whatever that is obliged to go thither in order to quench its thirst, is in danger, *tanquam canis ad Nilum*, of becoming a victim to the irresistible power of this blood-thirsty tyrant.

It should seem, that in case gazels, and other such animals had scent of the lion when he was near them, as strong as it appeared to be in my horses and oxen, they might easily avoid the danger. I do not know how the fact really stands; but it is possible that the lion, like the sportsmen of this country, may know so well how to chuse the place of its concealment, that the wind may drive its effluvia from the side whence it might be perceived by its prey.

Following the example of other travellers in such tracts of this part of Africa as are infested by lions, we always took the precaution to make loud cracks with our large ox-whip, whenever we were going to pass a river. These cracks of a whip, which, in fact, make a louder noise, and a greater vibration in the air than the discharge from a pistol, nay, are heard much farther than the report of a gun, is looked upon as a very efficacious method of scaring away wild beasts. These large whips seem, therefore, to have contributed not a little to the greater degree of dread which, since the arrival of the colonists, the lions have of mankind.

The lion's method of taking its prey, as described above, is not, however, probably, so universal as to be without exception. Soon after my arrival at the Cape, I heard

Speak of a married woman, who somewhere in the *Carrow* country was killed at her own door by a lion, which likewise ate up her hand; though others, indeed, thought she came by her death in a different manner. Several farmers related to me the following singular freak of a lion in *Camdebo*.

“ A few years ago a farmer on horseback, with a led horse in hand, met with a lion, which had laid itself down in the public road where the farmer was to pass. Thus circumstanced, he thought it most adviseable to turn back, but found the lion had taken a circle, and laid itself in his way again; he was therefore obliged to turn back again, and so alternately backwards and forwards. Whether the lion was scared away by several more travellers coming up or no, I cannot say that I recollect; for I find, that I have forgot to make a minute of the story, probably, because I did not think my authority sufficiently to be depended upon. The following occurrence, however, I think I may relate, as being tolerably well authenticated, and serving to shew the cowardice and insidious disposition of the lion.

“ An elderly Hottentot in the service of a Christian, near the upper part of *Sunday-river* on the *Camdebo* side, perceived a lion following him at a great distance for two hours together. Thence he naturally concluded, that the lion only waited for the approach of darkness, in order to make him his prey; and in the mean time, could not expect any other than to serve for this fierce animal's supper, inasmuch as he had no other weapon of defence than a stick, and knew that he could not get home before it was dark.

1775.  
December.

dark. But as he was well acquainted with the nature of the lion, and the manner of its seizing upon its prey, and at the same time had leisure between whiles to ruminate on the ways and means in which it was most likely that his existence would be put an end to, he at length hit on a method of saving his life, for which, in fact, he had to thank his meditations upon death, and the small skill he had in zoology, (or, to speak plainly, his knowledge of the nature of animals.) For this purpose, instead of making the best of his way home, he looked out for a *klipkrans*, (so they generally call a rocky place level and plain at top, and having a perpendicular precipice on one side of it,) and sitting himself down on the edge of one of these precipices, he found, to his great joy, that the lion likewise made a halt, and kept the same distance as before. As soon as it grew dark, the Hottentot sliding a little forwards, let himself down below the upper edge of the precipice upon some projecting part or cleft of the rock, where he could just keep himself from falling. But in order to cheat the lion still more, he set his hat and cloak on the stick, making with it at the same time a gentle motion just over his head, and a little way from the edge of the mountain. This crafty expedient had the desired success. He did not stay long in that situation, before the lion came creeping softly towards him like a cat, and mistaking the skin-cloak for the Hottentot himself, took his leap with such exactness and precision, as to fall headlong down the precipice, directly close to the snare which had been set up for him; when the Hottentot is said, in his great joy, exultingly to have called

called out, *i'katsi*, an interjection of very extensive import and signification." 1775.  
December.

This is not the only instance of lions in Africa being ensnared in the midst of their leap. In the out-houses and waste grounds about farms, where a lion has been upon the watch for some animal and missed it, or where they have other reasons to expect him, they set up the figure of a man close by the side of several loaded guns; so that these discharge themselves into the body of the beast, at the very instant that he springs or throws himself upon the dressed figure.

As this is done with so much ease and success, and as they hardly ever think it worth while in Africa to take lions alive, they seldom give themselves the trouble of catching them by means of pit-falls. From all the most credible accounts I could collect concerning the lions, as well as from what I saw myself, I think I may safely conclude, that this wild beast is frequently a great coward; that is, very deficient in point of courage comparatively to his strength: on the other hand, however, he often shews an unusual degree of intrepidity, of which I will just mention the following instance, as it was related to me.

“ A lion had broken into a walled inclosure for cattle through the latticed gate, and done a good deal of damage. The people belonging to the farm, were well assured of his coming again by the same way; in consequence of which, they stretched a line directly across the entrance, so thick set with loaded guns, that they must necessarily discharge themselves into the lion's body as soon as ever he should come, which they firmly expected he would, to displace

1775.  
December.

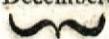
the line with his breast. But the lion, which came in the day-time before it was yet dark, and probably had some suspicions with respect to the line, struck it away with his foot; and without betraying the least fear in consequence of the reports made by the loaded pieces, went on steadily and careless of every thing, and devoured the prey it had left untouched before."

M. BUFFON (Tom. IX. p. 7.) tells us, on the authority of MARMOL and THEVENOT, that the lions, which in the more cultivated and inhabited parts of Barbary and India, are used to experience man's superiority, sometimes suffer themselves to be intimidated with a few strokes of a stick (and that even by women and children) from carrying off their prey. This accords with several accounts that I heard at the Cape, of slaves who had had courage enough, with a knife or some other weapon still more insignificant, to defend their master's cattle, which had been attacked in the dark by a lion.

It is singular, that the lion, which, according to many, always kills his prey immediately if it belongs to the brute creation, is reported frequently, although provoked, to content himself with merely wounding the human species; or at least, to wait some time before he gives the fatal blow to the unhappy victim he has got under him. A farmer, who the year before had the misfortune to be a spectator of a lion's seizing two of his oxen, at the very instant he had taken them out of the waggon, told me, that they immediately fell down dead upon the spot close to each other; though, upon examining the carcases afterwards, it appeared that their backs only had been broken. In  
several

several places through which I passed, they mentioned to me by name a father and his two sons, who were said to be still living, and who being on foot near a river on their estate in search of a lion, this latter had rushed out upon them, and thrown one of them under his feet; the two others, however, had had time enough to shoot the lion dead upon the spot, which had lain almost across the youth so nearly and dearly related to them, without having done him any particular hurt.

1775.  
December.



I myself saw, near the upper part of *Duyven-boek-rivier*, an elderly Hottentot, who at that time (his wounds being still open) bore under one eye and underneath his cheek-bone the ghastly marks of the bite of a lion, which did not think it worth his while to give him any other chastisement for having, together with his master (whom I also knew) and several other Christians, hunted him with great intrepidity, though without success. The conversation ran every where in this part of the country upon one *BOTA*, a farmer and captain in the militia, who had lain for some time under a lion, and had received several bruises from the beast, having been at the same time a good deal bitten by him in one arm, as a token to remember him by; but upon the whole, had, in a manner, had his life given him by this noble animal. The man was said then to be living in the district of *Artaquas-kloof*.

I do not rightly know how to account for this merciful disposition towards mankind. Does it proceed from the lion's greater respect and veneration for man, as being equal to, or even a mightier tyrant than himself among the animal creation? or is it merely from the same caprice,

1775.  
December.



which has sometimes induced him not only to spare the life of men or brute creatures who have been given up to him for prey, but even to careſs them, and treat them with the greateſt kindneſs? Whims and freaks of this kind have, perhaps, in a great meaſure acquired the lion the reputation it has for generoſity; but I cannot allow this ſpecious name, ſacred only to virtue, to be lavished upon a wild beaſt. Slaves, indeed, and wretches of fervile minds, are wont with this attribute to flatter their greateſt tyrants; but with what ſhew of reaſon can this attribute be beſtowed upon the moſt powerful tyrant among quadrupeds, becauſe it does not exerciſe an equal degree of cruelty upon all occaſions?

That the lion does not, like the wolf, tiger, and ſome other beaſts of prey, kill a great deal of game or cattle at one time, perhaps, proceeds from this, that while he is employed in attacking one or two of them, the remainder fly farther than it accords with the natural indolence of this beaſt to follow them. If this be called generoſity, a cat may be ſtyled generous with reſpect to the rats; as I have ſeen this creature in the fields among a great number of the latter, where ſhe could have made a great havock at once, ſeize on a ſingle one only, and run off with it. The lion and the cat likewiſe, very much reſemble each other, in partly ſleeping out, and partly paſſing away in a quiet inactive ſtate a great part of their time, in which hunger does not urge them to go in queſt of their prey.

From what I have already related, and am farther about to mention, we may conclude, that it is not in magnanimity,

mity, as many will have it to be, but in an insidious and cowardly disposition, blended with a certain degree of pride, that the general character of the lion consists: and that hunger must naturally have the effect of now and then inspiring so strong and nimble an animal with uncommon intrepidity and courage. Moreover, being accustomed always itself to kill its own food, and that with the greatest ease, as meeting with no resistance, and even frequently to devour it reeking and weltering in its blood, it cannot but be easily provoked, and acquire a greater turn for cruelty than for generosity: but, on the other hand, not being accustomed to meet with any resistance, it is no wonder that when it does, it should sometimes be faint-hearted and crest-fallen; and, as I have already said, suffer itself to be scared away with a cudgel. Here follows another instance of this fact.

1775.  
December.

“A yeoman, a man of veracity, (JACOB KOK, of *Zee-koe-rivier*,) related to me an adventure he had in these words: One day walking over his lands with his loaded gun, he unexpectedly met with a lion. Being an excellent shot, he thought himself pretty certain, in the position he was in, of killing it, and therefore fired his piece. Unfortunately he did not recollect, that the charge had been in it for some time, and consequently was damp; so that his piece hung fire, and the ball falling short, entered the ground close to the lion. In consequence of this he was seized with a panic, and took directly to his feet; but being soon out of breath, and closely pursued by the lion, he jumped up on a little heap of stones, and there made a stand, presenting the butt-end of his gun to his adversary, fully resolved to defend his life as well as he could to the utmost. My friend

1775.  
December.



friend did not take upon him to determine, whether this position and manner of his intimidated the lion or not; it had, however, such an effect upon the creature, that it likewise made a stand: and what was still more singular, laid itself down at the distance of a few paces from the heap of stones seemingly quite unconcerned. The sportsman, in the mean while, did not dare to stir a step from the spot; besides, in his flight he had the misfortune to lose his powder-horn. At length, after waiting a good half hour, the lion rose up, and at first went very slowly, and step by step, as if it had a mind to steal off; but as soon as it got to a greater distance, it began to bound away at a great rate. It is very probable, that the lion, like the hyæna, does not easily venture upon any creature that makes a stand against it, and puts itself in a posture of defence. It is well known, that it does not, like the hound, find out its prey by the scent, neither does it openly hunt other animals. At least, the only instance ever known of this, is that which I have mentioned before, in Vol. I. p. 307. in which it is spoken of as having hunted an *elk-antilope*: though it might possibly be, that this wild beast was reduced by extreme hunger to such an extraordinary expedient. The lion, nevertheless, is swift of foot. Two hunters informed me, that an imprudent and foolhardy companion of theirs, was closely pursued by a lion in their flight, and very nearly overtaken by it, though he was mounted on an excellent hunter.

The lion's strength is considerable. This animal was once seen at the Cape to take an heifer in his mouth, and though the legs of this latter dragged on the ground, yet  
seemed

seemed to carry her off with the same ease as a cat does a rat. It likewise leaped over a broad dike with her, without the least difficulty. A buffalo, perhaps, would be too cumbersome for this beast of prey, notwithstanding his strength, to seize and carry off with him in the manner above-mentioned. Two yeomen, upon whose veracity I can place some confidence, gave me the following account relative to this matter.

1775.  
December.



“ Being a hunting near *Bosbies-man-rivier* with several Hottentots, they perceived a lion dragging a buffalo from the plain to a neighbouring woody hill. They, however, soon forced it to quit its prey, in order to make a prize of it themselves; and found that this wild beast had had the sagacity to take out the buffalo’s large and unwieldy entrails, in order to be able the easier to make off with the fleshy and more eatable part of the carcase. The wild beast, however, as soon as he saw from the skirts of the wood, that the Hottentots had begun to carry off the flesh to the waggon, frequently peeped out upon them, and probably with no little mortification.” The lion’s strength, however, is said not to be sufficient alone to get the better of so large and strong an animal as the buffalo; but, in order to make it his prey, this fierce creature is obliged to have recourse both to agility and stratagem; insomuch, that stealing on the buffalo, it fastens with both its paws upon the nostrils and mouth of the beast, and keeps squeezing them close together, till at length the creature is strangled, wearied out, and dies. A certain colonist, according to report, had had an opportunity of seeing an attack of this kind; and others had reason to conclude, that something of this nature

1775.  
December.

ture had passed, from seeing buffaloes, which had escaped from the clutches of lions, and bore the marks of the claws of these animals about their mouth and nose. They asserted, however, that the lion itself risked its life in such attempts, especially if any other buffalo was at hand to rescue that which was attacked. It was said, that a traveller once had an opportunity of seeing a female buffalo with her calf, defended by a river at her back, keep for a long time at bay five lions which had partly surrounded her, but did not (at least as long as the traveller looked on) dare to attack her. I have been informed from very good authority, that on a plain to the east of *Kromme-rivier*, a lion had been gored and trampled to death by a herd of cattle; having, urged probably by hunger, ventured to attack them in broad day-light.

This the reader will, perhaps, not so much wonder at, when he is told, that in the day-time, and upon an open plain, twelve or sixteen dogs will easily get the better of a large lion. There is no necessity for the dogs, with which the lion is to be hunted, to be very large and trained up to the sport, as M. BUFFON thinks they should be, the business being perfectly well accomplished with the common farmhouse dogs. When these have got pretty near the lion, the latter, from a greatness of soul, does not offer to fly any farther, but sits himself down. The hounds then surround him, and, rushing on him all at once, are thus, with their united strength, able to tear in pieces, almost in an instant, the strongest of all wild beasts. It is said, that he has seldom time to give more than two or three slight strokes with his paws, (each of which strokes is  
instant

instant death) to an equal number of his assailants. M. DE BUFFON asserts also, that the lion may be hunted on horseback, but that the horses as well as the dogs must be trained to it: this is probably a mere conjecture of that ingenious author, as he does not mention his informers on this point. In Africa, the colonists hunt the lion with common hunting horses; indeed, I do not know how they could easily be able to get horses trained up only to the chase of the lion.

1775.  
December.

It is said, that horses in battle, or in other dangerous enterprizes, suffer themselves more willingly to be caparioned by their riders than at other times; a circumstance which I think I have likewise remarked in these animals, on expeditions, where the danger, indeed, was not so great, as in hunting the buffalo and rhinoceros, when they have passed rivers, and gone up and down steep places and precipices with the greatest alacrity. Our horses, the very same as had several times, in the manner above-mentioned, shewn their disquietude when the lion happened to be in the vicinity of them, and which were not in the least trained to the chase, once exhibited a spirit in the pursuit of two large lions, equal to that which they had shewn at other times in chasing the timid gazels. Though, in fact, hunting horses seem to partake much more of their master's pleasure in the chase: I remember in particular, at *Agter Bruntjes Hoogte*, I rode a horse which, by a tremulous sound issuing from its chest, cocking up its ears, and prancing and capering, discovered, in an unequivocal manner, its ardour for the chase, whenever it came in sight of the larger kind of game. There have even been instances of hunting horses, who, when the hunter has jumped off

1775.  
December.

their backs in order to discharge his piece, but has missed his mark, have, in their eagerness for the chase, not allowed him time sufficient to mount again, but followed the game alone for hours together, close at its very heels, in all its turnings and windings.

The chase of the lion on horseback is, in fact, carried on in the same manner as that of the elephant, which I have already described in Vol. I. p. 315; but as various particulars, hitherto unknown, concerning the lion's disposition, may be learned from it, a description of it here will, perhaps, not be superfluous; and, in case I should be too minute and circumstantial, I shall hope for the indulgence of the candid reader; particularly of such of them as are sportsmen, and are conscious with what high glee and satisfaction they are wont to describe, with the utmost minuteness and proximity, every turning and winding of a poor timid hare.

It is only on the plains, that the hunters venture to go out on horseback after the lion. If it keeps in some copse, or wood, on a rising ground, they endeavour to tease it with dogs till it comes out; they likewise prefer going together two or more in number, in order to be able to assist and rescue each other, in case the first shot should not take place.

When the lion sees the hunters at a great distance, it is universally allowed, that he takes to his heels as fast as ever he can, in order to get out of their fight; but if they chance to discover him at a small distance from them, he is then said to walk off in a surly manner, but without putting himself in the least hurry, as though he was above shewing any fear, when he finds himself discovered or hunted.

He

He is therefore reported likewise, when he finds himself pursued with vigour, to be soon provoked to resistance, or at least he disdains any longer to fly. Consequently he slackens his pace, and at length only sidles slowly off step by step, all the while eying his pursuers askaunt; and finally makes a full stop, and turning round upon them, and at the same time giving himself a shake, roars with a short and sharp tone, in order to shew his indignation, being ready to seize on them and tear them in pieces. This is now precisely the time for the hunters to be upon the spot, or else to get as soon as possible within a certain distance of him, yet so as at the same time to keep at a proper distance from each other; and he that is nearest, or is most advantageously posted, and has the best mark of that part of the lion's body which contains his heart and lungs, must be the first to jump off his horse, and, securing the bridle by putting it round his arm, discharge his piece; then in an instant recovering his seat, must ride obliquely athwart his companions; and, in fine, giving his horse the reins, must trust entirely to the speed and fear of this latter, to convey him out of the reach of the fury of the wild beast, in case he has only wounded him, or has absolutely missed him. In either of these cases, a fair opportunity presents itself for some of the other hunters to jump off their horses directly, as they may then take their aim and discharge their pieces with greater coolness and certainty. Should this shot likewise miss, (which, however, seldom happens,) the third sportsman rides after the lion, which at that instant is in pursuit of the first or the second, and, springing off his horse, fires his piece, as soon as he has got within a proper distance, and finds a

1775.  
December.



1775.  
December.


 sufficiently convenient part of the animal present itself, especially obliquely from behind. If now the lion turns upon him too, the other hunters turn again, in order to come to his rescue with the charge, which they loaded with on horseback, while they were flying from the wild beast.

No instance has ever been known, of any misfortune happening to the hunters in chasing the lion on horseback. The African colonists, who are born in, or have had the courage to remove into the more remote parts of Africa, which are exposed to the ravages of wild beasts, are mostly good marksmen, and are far from wanting courage. The lion, that has the boldness to seize on their cattle, which are the most valuable part of their property, sometimes at their very doors, is as odious to them, as he is dangerous and noxious. They consequently seek out these animals, and hunt them with the greatest ardour and glee, with a view to exterminate them. When the lion, therefore, comes upon their grounds, it is much the same as if they were going to fight *pro aris et focis*; and I have heard several yeomen at *Agter Bruntjes Hoogte*, when I was out a hunting with them, merely express a wish to meet with the lions, in case there were any in that neighbourhood, without mentioning a word about shooting them; a sign, that with regard to that part of the business they were pretty sure of their hands.

The lion is by no means hard to kill. Those who have had occasion to shoot several of these animals, have assured me, that while buffaloes and the larger species of antilopes will now and then make their escape and run fairly off with

With a ball in their bowels, or in the cavity of their abdomen, of which I myself have seen instances, the lion, on the contrary, on being shot in this manner, will be thrown into a vomiting, and be disabled from running. But be that as it may, it is natural to suppose, that a well-directed shot that enters the heart or lungs, should suffice to kill the lion, as well as the elephant and every other creature: therefore, as M. DE BUFFON acknowledges, that the lion's hide cannot withstand either ball or dart, it is inconceivable how it should come into this author's head to assert, without having the least authority for it, that this furious beast is hardly ever to be killed with a single shot.

1775.  
December.



The hides of lions are looked upon as being inferior to, and more rotten than those of cows, and are seldom made use of at the Cape, excepting for the same purpose as horses hides. I met with a farmer, however, who used a lion's hide for upper leathers to his shoes, and spoke highly of them, as being pliable and lasting.

The next morning, being the 13th, we were lucky enough to shoot a buffalo fatter than the former. (For a figure of this animal, vide Plate II. of this volume.) This was a great treat for my Hottentots, and, indeed, for myself, as the flesh of the other was grown putrid in consequence of the warmth of the weather, and the bad quality of the meat itself. Besides, I had now a better opportunity of drawing up a description of this beast, which has been hitherto unknown, and at the same time of making a rough draught of it. Immediately after the report of the gun, we saw the buffalo fall upon its knees; he afterwards, however, raised himself up, and ran seven or eight hundred paces into a thicket,

1775.  
December.

thicket, and directly upon this, with a most dreadful bellowing, gave us to understand that it was all over with him. All this together formed a spectacle, which most sportsmen would have been highly delighted to have been present at. This creature, as well as most of the larger kind of game, was shot by the Hottentot whom my friend and host at *Sea-cow-river* had sent along with me, by way of being my guide and marksman. Even some of the best huntsmen among the farmers are obliged, for the most part, to make use of Hottentots by way of bush-hunters; as in their skin cloaks they do not excite the attention of the wild beasts, so much as the Christians do in their dress. They are likewise ready at any time when there is occasion for it, to go bare-foot, and crawl softly upon their bellies, till they come within a proper distance of the animal. Moreover, when the buffalo at length is irritated, the Hottentots can much easier escape from the danger which threatens them, than a Christian. I myself, on another occasion, saw two Hottentots run with amazing swiftness, when a buffalo was in pursuit of them.

It was not without the greatest discontent on the part of my Hottentots, that I made a draught, and took the dimensions of this buffalo; thus preventing them, in the mean while, from falling aboard of the flesh. Neither did they afterwards delay one moment to cut a few slices off and broil them. They likewise laid two bones on the fire to broil, for the sake of the marrow. After this they began to take out the entrails, which, according to the testimony of my Hottentots, perfectly resembled those of an ox: the buffalo's, however, are much larger, and take up more room, and indeed gave us no little trouble in clearing

clearing them away; for the diameter of this creature's body was full three feet.

1775.  
December.

Upon the whole, the size of the buffalo was as follows: the length eight feet, the height five and a half, and the forelegs two feet and a half long; the larger hoofs were five inches over; from the tip of the muzzle to the horns was twenty-two inches. This animal in shape, as may be seen in the plate, very much resembled the common ox; but the buffalo has much stouter limbs, in proportion to its height and length. Their fetlocks hang likewise nearer to the ground. The horns are singular, both in their form and position; the bases of them are thirteen inches broad, and are only an inch distance from each other; by which means, there is formed between them a narrow channel or furrow, in a great measure bare of hair. Measuring them from this furrow, the horns rise up in a spherical form, with an elevation of three inches at most. In this way they extend over a great part of the head, viz. from the nape of the neck to the distance of three and a half inches from the eyes; so that the part from which they grow out, does not occupy a space of less than eighteen or twenty inches in circumference. From hence bending down on each side of the neck, and becoming more cylindrical by degrees, they each of them form a curve, the convex part of which is turned towards the ground, and the point up in the air; which, however, at the same time is generally inclined backwards. The distance between the points of the horns is frequently above five feet; the colour of them is black; and the surface to within about a third part of them measured from the base, is very rough and  
craggy,

1775.  
December.

craggy, with cavities sometimes an inch deep. Neither these cavities, nor the elevations which are formed between them, appear to be at all accidental, as there is a tolerable similitude between these excrescences, though they are very different in different buffaloes. The ears are a foot in length, somewhat pendant, and in a great measure covered and defended by the lower edges of the horns. The edges of the ears are notched and shrivelled up in divers ways, which probably proceeds from the wounds these creatures frequently receive in their battles with each other, and from the rents they get in the briars and almost impenetrable thickets through which they pass together, with other casualties of that nature. Though several Hottentots have been induced from thence to imagine, that the buffaloes belonged to certain supernatural beings, who marked these animals in this manner for their own cattle. By way of naming these beings to me, they made use of the word *duyvel*, which means devil.

The hairs of the buffalo are of a dark brown colour, about an inch long, harsh, and, on such males as are advanced in years, very thin, especially on the middle of the sides of the belly; hence they appear at some distance as if they were girt with a belt; and what contributes not a little to this appearance is, that the buffaloes in general are very fond of rolling in the mire. The hairs on the knees are in most buffaloes somewhat longer than those on the rest of the body, and lie, as it were, in whirls. The eyes are somewhat sunk within their prominent orbits. This, together with the near situation of them to the bases of the horns, which hang somewhat over its pendant dangle

ling ears, and its usual method of holding its head inclined to one side, gives the buffalo a fierce and treacherous aspect. The disposition likewise of the animal seems to correspond with its countenance. He may in some sort be called treacherous, as he is wont to hide himself among the trees, and stand there skulking till somebody happens to come very near him, when he rushes out at once into the road, and sometimes attacks them. This animal likewise deserves the appellation of fierce and cruel, as it has been remarked, that, not content with throwing down and killing the person whom he attacks, he stands over him afterwards, in order to trample upon him with his hoofs and heels, at the same time crushing him with his knees, and with his horns and teeth tearing to pieces and mangling the whole body, and stripping off the skin by licking it with his tongue. This, however, he does not do all at once, but at intervals, going away between whiles to some distance off. Notwithstanding all this, the buffalo will bear to be hunted; though sometimes he will turn and hunt his pursuer, whose only dependence in that case is upon the swiftness of his steed. The surest way to escape from him is to ride up some hill, as the great bulk of the buffalo's body, like that of the elephant, is a weight sufficient to prevent him from being able to vie with the slender and fine-limbed horse in swiftness; though, on the other hand, the buffalo, in going down-hill, gets on much faster than the horse; a fact to which I have more than once been an eye-witness.

The buffalo is said to be of a very hot nature, by reason that, according to the most authentic information I could procure, when thoroughly warmed in hunting, he

1775.  
December.

throws himself into the first water he meets with, whether it be fresh or salt. One thing is certain, and that is, that he frequently, and seemingly with great pleasure, wallows in the mire; and from this circumstance it is supposed he could not, with any prospect of success, be tamed for the yoke, as when he was weary and warm, he would throw himself into the nearest water, or be guilty of some other tricks.

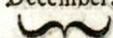
Mr. HEMMING, the sub-governor, had, during my residence at the Cape, endeavoured to tame a buffalo; but it was said, that this animal was too wild, and at the same time too strong and ungovernable to be confined by any yoke or harness whatever; or to be kept in order and subjection by the tame oxen, which were trained for that purpose, and along with which he was to be yoked.

On my return through *Krakekamma* I saw a buffalocalf, as tame as any of the ordinary calves with which it was grazing. It had been taken soon after it was brought into the world, having the navel-string hanging to it; but notwithstanding its being so young, it made great resistance to the people who caught it. A fortnight afterwards it had already acquired so much strength, that the owner of it, a stout lusty man, found it difficult to lead it along. In fact, it was somewhat taller, and much stouter than other calves of the same age. The colour of it was a very light brown, the hairs long and rough, and on the back lying in whirls; in the nape of the neck these same hairs inclined forwards, while those on the forehead were turned backwards; on the lip, some of them were long and stiff; and indeed, they were of a considerable length on the whole

whole of the lower jaw, and under the belly. The fore-part of this creature appeared to be low in proportion to the rest of its body; the head was large, and the ears long and pendent; the legs shorter than those of an ordinary calf; and its aspect fulky and treacherous. The owner intended to present it to the governor for his menagerie. For my part, I do not in the least doubt of the possibility of breaking buffaloes for the yoke, provided the calves are taken very young, and are put to it at an early period, and for a long time together. By a properly adapted sparing diet, and frequently milking the cows, these animals might, after several generations, lose as much of their fierceness as might be thought necessary, and yet retain so much of their native vigour as to be stronger than the common oxen. It would be a curious experiment, to couple the male or female buffalo with a common bull or cow. Most of the wild buffalo-calves that I have seen were, like the tame one I have just described, of a light brown colour; and the younger they were, the paler was the colour. I have already observed, under the date of the 9th of this month, with what strength the buffalo pressed into the midst of the closest thickets; in this the beast is assisted by the broad part of its horns, which, at the same time that it serves to pierce through the prickly bushes, is of use in guarding and saving its eyes.

The flesh of the buffalo is coarse and not very fat, but full of juice, and of a high and not disagreeable flavour. The hide is thick and tough, and is in great request with the farmers for thongs and harnesses. Of it we made the only halters that can be depended upon for

1775:  
December.

1775.  
December.

securing our horses and oxen; so that these beasts cannot get loose by snapping them asunder, which they are otherwise apt to do, when the lions and wolves make their appearance in the neighbourhood. Every such halter should be a finger and a half in breadth, and about three yards long, and are sold a good way up in the country for a quarter of a rixdollar apiece.

The hide of the buffalo we had now shot, after it had been dressed in some sort by my Hottentots, by being stretched out and salted a little, and afterwards half dried, served to make a pair of new four-plaited traces for my waggon. We observed, that the ball had hit the lower part of the neck and entered the lungs, where, though it did not seem to have struck against any bone, and though it was alloyed with the usual quantity of tin, it was yet found to be pretty much flattened. In other buffaloes that we shot since, I have sometimes found the balls, though alloyed with tin, shivered into several pieces against the bones, in the internal parts, or at least, very much flattened. It is not, therefore, worth while to set about shooting the buffalo with balls made of lead only, for they will seldom be able to penetrate into those parts where they are likely to prove mortal. Besides, being possessed of the degree of hardness requisite, a ball should be of a tolerable size, in order to kill so large an animal as the buffalo. The least that ought to be used for this purpose, should weigh two ounces and a quarter.

I have spoken of the buffalo, as being an animal hitherto unknown. So, in fact, I presume to call it, as I am the first that have given a description and drawing of it, which

which I have done in the Swedish Transactions, by the name of the *bos Caffer*. My readers will, perhaps, excuse me for making use, in a great measure, of the same words in both places, and for being here more diffuse and circumstantial.

1775.  
December.

In M. DE BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 416. Tab. 41. we find the horns only engraved, as they were brought from the Cape by the Abbé DE LA CAILLE.

The Abbé DE MANET, Tom. II. p. 129. gives us a few lines concerning a sort of buffalo, which seems to answer this which I call the *bos Caffer*. Mr. PENNANT, in the last edition of his *Synopsis of Quadrupeds*, Vol. II. p. 29. speaks likewise of this species of buffalo.

My Hottentots shewed so much diligence and zeal both in cutting up and eating this beast, that the encouragement and stimulation, which is otherwise frequently necessary to set their sluggish and heavy souls in motion, would on this occasion have been quite superfluous. They drove the waggon then up to the place where the beast lay, and loaded it with the best and fattest part of the flesh. The raw hide, which was of considerable weight and extent, was tied under the waggon till it should be wanted, and the two remaining legs or marrow-bones were fastened to each side of the body of the waggon. Notwithstanding this, our *Boshies-men* had each of them loaded themselves with a quantity of slices of flesh made up into bundles. Thus covered up to the eyes and ears in meat, we made a singular appearance, which might have given any traveller that had happened to pass that way, the idea of a walking flesh-market. As we proceeded on our journey, a swarm  
of

1775.  
December.

of other carnivorous animals in a considerable number, viz. eagles, falcons, and common hawks, were seen soon afterwards to occupy our places about the buffalo's remains; though we saw none of them either in the trees or flying about in the air, till we had got to the distance of a few gun-shots from the spot.

We had scarcely got half an *uur* on our road, before we saw a great number of *quaggas*, with a huge fat *Cape-elm*; and besides this, on the open plains, two male buffaloes came within seventy paces of us.

It was singular enough, that these latter did not seem to perceive either us or our waggon for a long while, till we made an intolerable noise with laughing and talking; when at length they looked up at us, but staid, notwithstanding, a good while before they betook themselves to flight.

My Hottentots, who saw I was fond of hunting of different sorts, the chase of flies and butterflies not excepted, thought it very strange that I should now neither shoot these animals myself, nor suffer them to do it. They, however, owned at length, that I was perfectly in the right, in consequence of my reminding them, that they were covered up to the eyes in buffalo's fat; and that the flesh with which they had already loaded the waggon, both inside and out, would be quite putrid before they could eat it all up; that they ought not to put themselves on a level with so voracious a beast as the wolf, of which they often expressed their hatred and abhorrence, on account of its killing and wounding every thing it met with; and finally, that these buffaloes, if they were spared at present,

and not scared away, might prove extremely useful to somebody else; perhaps, indeed, to ourselves on our return home. This moderation acquired me afterwards a great deal of respect from many of the colonists, as with great reason, they were very much discontented with the capricious conduct of several sportsmen, who, merely for the pleasure of shooting, are guilty of wasting the treasures of nature in the most unjustifiable manner; and by unnecessarily destroying the game, spoil their own sport in future, as well as that of others. For when they now and then make a little hunting excursion (as they term it) they seldom or ever return from the pursuit of a herd of game, before they have made a great havock among them, though the carcases are afterwards left to rot on the ground. It is true, at every shot they take they leap off their horses, to discharge their pieces; but mounting again immediately, load their guns, at the same time that they are continuing the pursuit of the gazels. In the mean time, I could not help picturing to my imagination, the pleasure which, on the other hand, such a shot as I had had that day, would have given me in the South Sea, when I might have treated myself and my famished mess-mates with some excellent high-flavoured roast beef of buffalo's flesh.

1775.  
December.

We took the oxen out of the waggon, and baited a considerable time at the river *Keusi kunnii aati*, which, in the Hottentot language, bears pretty nearly the signification of *Let not the ugly drink here*. This river is by the colonists otherwise called *Little Boshies-mans-river*.

The flesh as well as the marrow of the buffalo, was in itself very delicate; but both Mr. IMMELMAN and I could  
not

1775.  
December.

not help being disgusted with it at times, as we saw the Hottentots eat so immoderately and greedily of it. For whole nights together the flesh-kettle was kept boiling on the fire, and frequently they broiled some more of the flesh between whiles. As soon as any one of the Hottentots was awake, he was immediately prepared to eat both boiled and roast. Sleeping or waking, as one may say, they had always either meat or a pipe in their mouths; and besides, as they found leisure and opportunity, viz. the two or three first days after we had shot any game, several of them were particularly careful and diligent in skimming off the fat from the pot. Besides, however assiduous they were in besmearing their bodies with it, yet I was always obliged to exert my authority as their master, in order to make them put a little of it on my shoes and bridles, which would otherwise have been cracked in pieces, or parched up by the drought of the weather.

In their dispositions my Hottentots were, particularly in the evenings, merry and talkative, and that sometimes in a high degree. I have every reason to believe, that Mr. IMMELMAN and I were not unfrequently the subjects of their gibes, jokes, and laughter. Persuaded as we were of this, it was just as well for us that we did not understand the language; especially, as now we could not be more hurt than if we imagined they abused us in thought only; and in that case, we were far from being so squeamish as a certain officer, who first punished a soldier for a fault he had committed, and afterwards, merely on the suspicion that he must infallibly have had the impudence

impudence to take it amiss, ordered a certain number of lashes to be given him into the bargain.

1775.  
December.



In the desert in particular, a great deal of management was requisite, in order to keep in with the Hottentots; so that these people, who are very much inclined, on every little whim that takes them, to run away, might not, in that place, desert us. On the other hand, not to give room by too much lenity, for any great degree of neglect and impudence, we were twice under the necessity of trying what effect blows would have upon them, and we found that they answered the purpose extremely well. Prudence, however, required, that the offender's crime, his remissness and neglect of duty, for instance, should be represented, as being likewise a great offence against their own comrades, and punished accordingly; who by this means, as well as by that of hemp, tobacco, and commendations properly distributed, were prevented from taking the delinquent's part. Having learnt by experience, that the Boshies-men in our service were extremely slothful and entirely independent on me, as long as they had by them any tolerable quantity of hemp or tobacco for smoking, I grew very sparing in my treats, giving out only enough for two or three pipes at a time, and none at all to such as had neglected their duty. In default of tobacco or hemp, they used to smoke the dry bark of some trees, moss, leaves, horse-dung, or that of the rhinoceros; to which they added, when they could get it, the stem of some old wooden pipe, strongly impregnated with the oil of the tobacco that had been smoked in it, cutting it into shreds, in order to meliorate, by the delicate flavour of the tobacco, that of the ingredient above-mentioned.

1775.  
December.

In those places where we happened to stay several days, some of the Boshies-men in our train laid themselves up night and day in perfect repose, without giving themselves the least trouble about any thing. I therefore refused to give them the least morsel of tobacco, till they had procured me some curious and uncommon insect or snake. By this contrivance I obtained a few rare articles; but for the most part, their indolence was such, that they would not give themselves the least trouble to look after any thing of the kind, till they were, as they termed it, very hungry for tobacco.

## C H A P. XII.

*Journey from Boshies-mans-river to Quammedacka.*

NEXT morning, being the 14th, at five o'clock, we proceeded on our journey. *Boshies-mans-rivier*, which we had just quitted, had no current; and though it is very deep in several places, yet it was brackish and had a salt taste, and was said to be always so in summer. A little farther to the east, we had to go through a vale covered with wood.

1775.  
December.

This vale is called *Niez-bout-kloof*, from a kind of tree which is said to excite sneezing, if it be rubbed and then smelled. We were not so fortunate as to find this tree, but from the description that was given me of it, I should imagine it belonged to the order of *lomentacæ*. A dried piece of this wood that was shewn to me, had almost entirely lost the property above-mentioned, neither had it any particular taste. This tree is said likewise to be found at *Bruntjes-boogte*, though very rarely.

As it may be a useful piece of intelligence for future travellers, I must just mention here, that somewhat more than half a mile to the left of the road, there is good water

1775.  
December.

to be found in a vale called *t'Kur-t'keija-t'kei-t'kasibina*, whither by a road that went over two hills we sent our oxen and horses at noon to water, while we stopped to refresh ourselves. In the evening we arrived at *Hassagai-bosch*. The other part of the road, together with the adjacent country, was full of steep hills; so that we were frequently obliged to lock the wheels of the waggon, and at the same to dismount, and lead our horses over the precipices.

As this day in my absence, an honour was conferred upon me at *Upsal* far exceeding my most sanguine expectations, viz. the degree of doctor in physic, an honour heightened by the flattering *proclamation* by which it was accompanied, I must take this opportunity of making my grateful acknowledgments for it, to SIR CHARLES LINNE', and the then promoter, professor J. SIDREN, who at that time composed the whole faculty of medicine, and who by their kind recommendations obtained permission of the most illustrious chancellor for this purpose. This instance of a Swede being, though afar off in a distant desert, present to the remembrance of his countrymen, will, probably, be no small encouragement to such of our compatriots, as may in future travel for the promotion of science; for which reason, I thought proper to make mention of it here.

Early the next morning, being the 15th day, we quitted *Hassagai-bosch*, which in itself is merely a little insignificant grove, and derives its name from a kind of tree to be found here, as well as in many other parts of the country. In the vale below, the water is tolerably good, though very scarce and stagnating. The district round about,

1775.  
December.

about, was of the kind called *Sour*. At noon we arrived at *Nieuw Jaars-drift*, where the thermometer stood at 80 in the shade. The water here was likewise good, and in some places very deep. The adjacent country had a delightful appearance, being adorned with great numbers of the *mimosa nilotica*; a tree we have had occasion frequently to mention before, and upon which we at this time caught a great many curious insects. My fellow-traveller, while he was running with his net after a butterfly, was very near falling into a pit, in which a sharp pole was stuck upright; and in that case, in all probability, would have shared the same fate as our insects, by being himself spit-  
ted through the body. This pit-fall was, probably, made by some of the Caffres or Hottentots wandering about these parts, for the purpose of catching a very different kind of game.

In the evening we came to *Kurekoiku*, or *t'Kurekoi t'Ku*. In our way thither, we saw a great number of buffaloes. Out of these I set out to hunt on horseback, a herd consisting of seventy or eighty beasts, old and young together. As I took with me only a light piece loaded with a leaden ball, my intention was merely to get a bit of roast veal, which, for the sake of change, we longed for very much. But I was disappointed in my views; for the old ones made a circle round the calves, so as quite to shelter them from me when I jumped off my horse, in order to discharge my piece. Some of the oldest of them in particular, putting themselves in a posture of defence, came forwards to meet me; by which means, they gave the others an opportunity to get farther off: at last, however,  
I fired.

1775.  
December.

I fired among the herd, when immediately, on hearing the report of the gun, they all made a full stop, and stared at me. I was not at that time perfectly acquainted with the nature and danger of buffalo-hunting, otherwise I should scarcely have ventured to set about it in the confident manner I then did; but very luckily for me, the ball did not hurt any of them; otherwise, probably, the whole buffalo corps would have turned round and hunted me down the craggy hill, up which I had just before pursued them close at their heels; in which case, I should not so easily have got off.

The hunters do not suppose it possible to kill the game sitting on their horses, partly on account of the weight of their pieces, and partly from the motion occasioned by their horses; but chiefly by reason, that both the horse and its rider are somewhat in a tremor, in consequence of the violent exercise they have just before undergone in pursuit of the game; while, on the other hand, by jumping off his steed, and supporting his gun with his ram-rod, in the manner before mentioned, the sportsman acquires a great degree of steadiness and certainty in his aim.

We staid at *Kurekoiku* till the evening of the 16th, in order to wash our linen ourselves and dry it in the sun. We were, indeed, at that time very slenderly provided with this article, as at our first setting out we had been too lavish of this and our other apparel to our Hottentots. Our chief inducement to this act of liberality was, together with our clothes, to get rid of a colony of disgustful animals, with which our driver in particular, in consequence of his setting in the front seat, had stocked our waggon. We  
after-

1775.  
December.

afterwards did not suffer the Hottentots to wear any other clothes than their own pellisses, as in these the vermin kept themselves more quiet, and were more easily picked up by the Hottentots, in which case, (the broiling part excepted,) they underwent the same fate as the prisoners of the Cannibals. Whether they did this, however, for the sake of gratifying their taste or revenge, is a question I willingly leave to be determined by the philosopher, who, shut up in his chamber, explains every phænomenon in nature from certain accidental occurrences. At least, the Hottentots themselves gave us no insight into this matter; as when we propounded this difficulty to them, they gave us no other answer than, *So maar, Baas! This is our way, Master!* In the mean time one may perceive from this, that men who are once sunk into a certain state of filth, degradation and misery, will not only be easily familiarised with it, but likewise, without the intervention of any other cause in particular, suffer themselves to be more and more debased.

The two Hottentots, however, which I had in my service, seemed, by their desire to earn and wear our European clothes, already inclined to rise from the inactive and debased condition into which they were plunged. It even flattered their ambition, that in consequence of the European dress we had given them, they might, perhaps, be taken for a kind of bastards, and consequently might be supposed to have some European blood in their veins. They had, however, not the least notion of taking care of their clothes, but wore them even in the desert as long as they would hang on their backs; and, indeed, until, in order to prevent the  
vermin

1775.  
December.

vermin they were covered with from spreading any farther, we obliged them to throw them away entirely.

On the same day on which they arrived at *Bruntjes Hoogte*, where they expected to meet with a number of smart girls of their own nation, they painted their noses, their cheeks, and the middle of their foreheads, with foot. A young Boshies-man, the only young man amongst all those whom I engaged in my service at *Zondags-rivier*, set off his person in the same manner. Excepting this, I could not observe that they even took any pains to insinuate themselves into the good graces of the other sex; but am rather inclined to suspect, that the first advances in the way of courtship, mostly came from the woman's side.

This day, while we were busied in running after insects, botanizing and washing, several of our Hottentots went a hunting; and in the course of their sport, had come within fifty or sixty paces of two lions, that were lying on the ground, but they had the prudence not to fire at them. The lions, likewise, as soon as they perceived the Hottentots, had stolen away as softly as they. The height of the thermometer, at noon, was 84 degrees.

In the evening we took our departure, and in our way met with and hunted a considerable number of buffaloes; one of them, which was wounded in the breast by a ball, escaped from us though closely pursued; but a female which was shot in the cheek, quite through a large vein, fell at last, after having ran to some distance.

This day my friend had an opportunity of seeing an amorous combat between two tiger-cats, and one of our

Hottentots caught four ostrich chicks alive, which we fed for several days with succulent plants, till they died in consequence of the jolting of the waggon.

1775.  
December.

That same evening we got to *Hevy*, and there baited all night. It was merely a rocky vale, in which there were several pits of stagnating and brackish water. From the flat summit of a mountain there dripped a little fresh water, of which we could hardly collect a quantity sufficient to quench our own thirst. All the plants round about (except the succulent ones) were dried up like hay.

On the 17th, at five in the morning, the thermometer was at 60, and at two in the afternoon at 80 degrees. Towards evening we departed, and got before night to *Quammedacka Well*.

This place is situated at the distance of two hours (uurs) from that which we had just quitted. A boggy pool of water, which at that time was partly dried up, from twenty to twenty-five feet across, was the only watering-place to be found in a tract of country of considerable extent; upon which account this was so much the more resorted to by wild beasts, and smelt so strong and rank of the buffaloes, rhinoceroses, and other animals that wallowed in it, that, at the distance of several feet, our cattle, and particularly our horses, perfectly shuddered at it. Their thirst, nevertheless, compelled them at last to sip a little of what was collected in the prints made by the feet of the larger kind of game. On a plot of ground a little higher than this bog, we discovered traces of a water-spring gently trickling down, and dug round about it. From hence we got, it is true, some water not quite so rank as the former, though it still retained a

1775.  
December.

perfectly muddy taste, and a blue cast, leaving on each side of the linen, through which we strained it, a deep and indelible stain of mud. On this occasion I could not help being struck with the remark, that habit and the characteristic turn of any nation, will generally get the better of the plainest dictates of common sense. My friend Mr. IMMELMAN pertinaciously followed the laudable Dutch custom of thoroughly wiping the basons or vessels with a clean towel, every time that water was fetched in them; though at the same time they were perfectly clean, or at the most, perhaps, were stained with the hundredth part of a grain of sugar, or else of coffee or tea-grounds, and he was just going to drink dirt out of them, I may say by the ounce.

This evening a herd of about two thousand *spring-boks* coming to drink out of the well, by the side of which we had pitched our tents, made a halt at the distance of two hundred paces in order to take a view of us; when I fired among them with a long gun, which was loaded with three small balls. And though one of these balls, as I afterwards found, hit a doe, and went quite through her, so as to pierce her liver, diaphragm, and one lobe of her lungs, she yet ran some hundreds of paces, before she began to totter, just after which she fell. She soon got up again, however, and skipped to the distance of one hundred and fifty paces farther, till she was caught fast in a thicket, where we overtook her and killed her. With a larger ball, in all-probability, the spring-bok would not be found so difficult to kill, especially if it hit any of the greater blood-vessels.

This

This animal, which is called by the colonists *spring-bok*, a term in the Dutch language signifying the *leaping* or *bounding* goat, I have already made mention of in the Swedish Transactions for 1780. The description, however, of so remarkable a creature, must not be omitted in this place.

1775.  
December.



This, if not the handsomest, is at least one of the handsomest, gazels in the whole world; being, like the gazel kind in general, is distinguished by its beautiful fiery eyes; so that in some parts of the east, it is reckoned, and not unjustly, as the greatest compliment that can be made to a handsome woman, to tell her that she has eyes like a gazel. *Vid. Prosp. Alpin. Hist. Ægypt. (l. 232.)*

MOSES (in *Numbers*, Chap. XIV.) seems by his *Dischon* to have meant this animal, as the seventy interpreters translate this word by *pygargus*; the signification of which (*uropygium album*, or *white rump*) best agrees with this species of gazel. PLINY (VIII. 53.) makes mention likewise of a *pygargus*; so does JUVENAL (Sat. XI. ver. 138.) According to my taste, this was the handsomest gazel I had seen in Africa, as, in fact, it was the most common; which latter I conclude from the circumstance of my having seen it in these places in much greater numbers, than all the other species put together. Hitherto, indeed, I had seen no more than one of them in their wild state, viz. on the plain near *Bosbians-rivier*; but between the two *Visch-riviers*, I have seen them spread over the plains in herds of different magnitudes, as far as the eye could reach; and putting together what I have observed in the course of a day's journey on horseback, their numbers amounted to several thousand. Those that I shot among to-day, were collected close together

1775.  
December.

ther into one herd, and, on hearing the report of my piece, directly formed a line, at the same time making a circular movement, as if they would surround us, but immediately afterwards flew off to a different side to that which they came from. In the *Bokke-Velds*, as they are called, these animals are found in great numbers, and sometimes at *Roode-Zand*. A great many of this species are kept in the governor's menagerie. And yet, though as beautiful as it is common, there has not been hitherto any tolerable drawing given of this animal; and much is still wanting, to the perfection of its history and description. On this occasion I cannot help expressing my astonishment, that the *mammalia*, or quadrupeds, the chief branch of the principal kingdom of nature, a branch, indeed, which comprehends man himself, should be so little known, and nevertheless so little studied by him. By the neglect of this study have lions, tigers, and other wild beasts, at least in Africa, without controul committed their ravages in the animal kingdom. Nay, they have, as we have already remarked, confined man himself within certain limits, so that he even cannot help trembling for fear of them in his own habitation.

As to this gazel in particular, it deserves, as indeed do all the works of the Creator, to be considered with all the precision and minuteness of which the subject is capable, that in it we may the better learn to know and adore the great Master of the Universe.

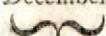
It appears, indeed, that self-love, which usually has so great a sway with us, should induce us to take this step; for these gazels ought, for the general advantage of mankind, to be made tame, and tended in the places where they

they now go to graze exposed to the ravages of lions, of which animals, in fact, they seem to be the peculiar property; and may be aptly termed, according to the expression of the Hottentots, their flocks of sheep. In the mean while, it is incumbent upon me to give previously to this, a tolerably accurate description of this animal, and communicate to the public what information I have got concerning the nature of it and its manners.

1775.  
December.



The height of it is two feet and a half; from the tip of the nose to the horns are seven inches; from the horns to the ears two; from the ears to the tail three feet three inches; the tail itself being somewhat less than a foot long; the length of the ears is six inches and a half; that of the horns, measuring them along their curvatures, is seven inches; the thickness of them at the base is two inches three quarters; and the distance of them from each other at that part one inch. After that they separate, as is shewn in the figure (vide Vol. II. Plate V.) more and more, till at about three-fourths of their length they stand at the distance of five inches from each other, when they turn inwards; so that the tips of them at last come within three inches and a half of each other. This appears to me to be the most general way, in which their horns are bent. In the same animals of this kind in the governor's menagerie I observed, however, that they varied greatly, inasmuch that some of these creatures horns were bent forwards, like the *naguer* of BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. XXXIV. In others again, they were turned back. This it is the more necessary to mention, as otherwise, by such variations in the horns, zoologists might be induced to make

1775.  
December.

make several species out of one. In like manner, I beg leave to remark on this occasion, that in both sexes of this species of gazel, the horns are similar both in size and shape; as M. PALLAS, *Spicil. Zoolog.* I. p. 10. misled by KÆMPFER, supposes the female to have very short horns, or none at all. In fact, it is from a female that I made the foregoing description. This same female I got stuffed, and have it at present in the cabinet of the Royal Academy. In answer to the query put in the *Spicil. Zoolog. Fascicul.* XI. p. 15. I will just mention, that the Comte DE BUFFON knew nothing at all of this gazel; and that the *koba's* horns, as well as those of the *tzeiran* (vide *Fascicul.* I. p. 10.) are, besides the position of them, too large ever to have belonged to this gazel.

To conclude, the horns of this beautiful animal are of a deep black colour; and from the bottom of them to somewhat above the middle, are adorned with rings raised above the surface. From hence they are quite smooth and plain, terminating in a sharp point; which, as it was said before, are turned inwards. The rings here spoken of are in number about fourteen, being raised a line or two above the surface, and inclining, as it were, forwards and downwards. On the sides, where the horns are somewhat flattened, these rings are less observable; and between each ring there is a number of small longitudinal *striae*. There are no *pori ceriferi* under the eyes of this animal.

The predominant colour in this animal is brown of various shades, or a light rust-colour. This same colour occupies a space of two inches in the forehead, just in the front of the horns, and goes between them over the nape  
of

of the neck, and the whole neck itself, a narrow flip in the front of it only excepted; in the same manner it extends over the back, the sides, the outside of the haunches, and the whole hind leg; but makes only a narrow stripe in the front of the fore leg. To the breadth of an inch or two, the posterior moiety of the ridge of the back is white, which colour is continued over and round the anus, the inside of the haunches, and the whole belly, the hind part, inside and outside of the fore legs, the chest, and the fore part of the ribs, whence it proceeds in a narrow stripe all along the neck, extending over the remainder of the head, except a dark-brown list on each side, of the breadth of an inch, which passes from the corner of the mouth over the eyes to the horns. A stripe an inch and a half broad of the same deep umber-colour, extends from the shoulders to the haunches, forming thus a boundary between the snowy whiteness of the belly, and the rusty colour of the sides. The hairs likewise, which encompass the white part of the back and of the anus, are of a somewhat darker brown than the rest.

The tail, at least at the lower part, is not thicker than a goose-quill, and underneath it is quite bare, being covered on the outside only with very short hairs; excepting, indeed, towards the tip, where there are a few dark-brown hairs from one to two inches and a half long, which are disposed in the manner exhibited in the figure.

The ears are of an ash-colour, in most places covered with very short hairs, and in some quite bare; several fine grey hairs, moreover, occupy the bores of the ears at the fore part and the whole of their edges. On the inside, they are mostly bare. The eye-brows, and a few short whiskers

1775.  
December.



1775.  
December.  
~

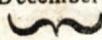
whiskers with which this creature is furnished, are black. The hairs in general are very fine and dense, the length of them being about half an inch. But the dark-brown ones, which border on the white on the hind part of the back, are from two to three, or three and a half inches long. Of about the same length are the white hairs, which grow nearest the dark-brown ones just mentioned; but the middle part of the white stripe, consists of short hairs like the rest of the body.

The intention of the long brown hairs is for the most part, and in a great measure, to cover the dazzling white part of the back just mentioned, the brightness and purity of which seems by this means to be preserved; so that the animal, by the expansion of this colour to the breadth of six, eight, or nine inches, may, on certain occasions, be able to make a more splendid appearance.

This expansion particularly takes place when the animal takes a high leap, which it never fails to do when it is pursued. Without any other view than that of contemplating this peculiar property of the *spring-bok*, I have frequently rode full speed after whole herds of them; when it was no less pleasant than curious, to see them jumping over each others heads to the height of two yards, and, indeed, sometimes much higher. Some of them would take three or four high leaps together in immediate succession, but did not seem to get on a whit faster than the others; which, in the meanwhile, kept on an even running pace, interspersed now and then with a moderate leap or two. With their loftiest bounds they made still less progress. In this situation too they seemed to be suspended, as it were, for some time in the

air, in order, perhaps with a kind of ostentation, to look over their shoulders at their pursuers; and at the same time, by the expansion of the white part of their backs to throw out a kind of menace, which, upon any other adversary than man, may, perhaps, have the intended effect.

1775.  
December.



The position of their bodies, when they made the highest leaps, was various. Sometimes we saw these animals with their backs bent convex, their heads downwards, and all their four feet brought close together. Sometimes their backs were hollow, so that their bellies bulged out beneath; by which means the nape of their necks and their rumps were brought pretty near to each other, while the fore feet and hind feet were so much the more separated for it.

When hunted, these animals suffer themselves soon to be dispersed, so that in a short time I had not more than two or three of them to pursue. Otherwise, as soon as the whole flock had got to some distance they would all make a stand, and turn round to look at their pursuers. It is pretty nearly in this posture that the animal is represented in the drawing hereto annexed, at the same time somewhat expanding the white hairs on its back and rump.

To conclude, *spring-boks* are extremely swift of foot; so that it requires a good horse, and one that is by no means deficient in point of wind, in order to overtake them. In other respects they are not very shy, sometimes allowing a sportsman either on foot or on horseback to come within reach of them. Their flesh is very palatable, and has a more juicy

1775.  
December.

and delicate taste, though at the same time less flavour than that of other gazels. I was informed, that in such years as are attended with great drought, the *spring-boks* repair in incredible numbers to the southwards, making towards the colonies at the Cape, and keeping straight forwards on their road till they are stopped by the sea, when they turn back to go home by the same way as they came, and most commonly with several lions at their heels.

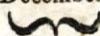
Mr. PENNANT calls this animal the *white antilope*. M. PALLAS gives it the name of the *antilope pygargus*. The *Systema Naturæ* mentions an animal by the name of *capra cervi-capra*; and it might be supposed, that the spring-bok was meant by it, as a drawing by Mr. HOUSTON is referred to, in some measure answering to it; but other circumstances seem to clash with this idea, particularly the figure in DODART; which, however, is referred to as being a good one, not bearing the least resemblance to this creature. The name of *cervi-capra*, moreover, as denoting an intermediate genus between the deer and the goat, is applicable to the whole race of gazels or antilopes.

After we had shot the *spring-buck*, we were obliged to stay at so miserable a watering-place as this *Quammedacka* five nights longer, as the two-horned rhinoceros (*rhinoceros bicornis*) was said to have its principal residence in these parts. The longing desire I had to shoot this remarkable animal was so much the greater, and the less to be wondered at, as it had hitherto been only known to naturalists by the double horns, which at various times had been brought into Europe, and preserved in different cabinets.

KOLBE,

KOLBE, indeed, pretends to have seen the *rhinoceros bicornis*; but as, besides giving a fabulous account of it, he has in the drawing he has given of it, represented the tail almost as bushy as that of a squirrel, it is certain, that this author, on this as well as many other occasions, is merely the echo of certain ignorant inhabitants of the Cape, whose relations cannot be depended upon. I was so much the more desirous to anatomise the *two-horned rhinoceros*, as the investigation of the internal parts of the one-horned animal had been entirely neglected, though this creature had been more than once brought to *Portugal, France, and England*, and had been kept there alive for some time; and upon the whole, has been tolerably well drawn and described, particularly by Dr. PARSONS, in the *Philosophical Transactions*. The reader may see, likewise, on this subject, an extract of my journal, in the *Swedish Transactions* for 1778, p. 307. with a figure of the rhinoceros. With what success my wishes were crowned, I shall now proceed to relate.

1775.  
December.



On the 18th day at seven in the morning, the thermometer stood at 60 degrees; at three in the afternoon it had risen to 84. This day I had a good opportunity of shooting several rare and uncommon small birds, which in this arid district, where water was so scarce, were obliged to come hither in the hottest part of the day, and venture their lives for a few drops of water, which they were in want of, as well for themselves as for the young brood they had left in their nests. Though they could not but be frightened away by my gun, and indeed some of them were wounded by the shot, and at the same time they could but too well see their destroyer, yet they came again, hopping

1775.  
December.

by little and little down to the water-side, in order to dip their bills into it with all haste, for the sake of quenching their intolerable thirst; seeming all the while with a ceaseless chirping to lament their dangerous situation, and at the same time to upbraid me with my cruelty. This spectacle, affecting as it was of itself, ought at this time to have made a still greater impression upon me, as, on account of the heat of the weather and the badness of the water I had to drink, I felt a thirst almost equal to theirs. "Yet, thought I to myself, on the other hand, what a mere trifle are a few birds compared with the populous fortified towns, which, merely from a desire of dominion, my betters make no conscience of afflicting with hunger and thirst both, in the highest degree!" and thus went on inventing many specious arguments, which cost several more birds their lives; and all this, merely with a view of finding among them some one that was rare and curious. So prone are men to commit acts of cruelty and tyranny, and at the same time to find excuses for their conduct.

About the middle of the following night we were awaked by the roaring of a lion, which brought to our recollection, that we might be as mere a trifle for these ravenous beasts, as the birds I have just mentioned are in the eyes of naturalists. Our oxen and horses appeared now much more disquieted than they were on a former occasion, when they heard several lions roaring at once; neither did our dogs now dare to bark, but with their tails between their legs crept close to the Hottentots; who on this occasion were very active in keeping up a good blaze, as they took it for granted, that a lion at that juncture was reconnoitring us at no great distance, and

1775  
December

and probably would not leave the place without paying us a visit. As they likewise believed that the eyes of the lion could be descried at a pretty good distance in the dark, they looked for them very attentively, in order that they might be able to discover from which side they had to expect the wild beast, and prepare themselves accordingly to receive it.

Mr. IMMELMAN'S situation and mine, which this gentleman, determined by motives of convenience rather than of prudence, had chosen the evening before, was extremely critical. We had quitted the waggon, as being just at that time too hot and sultry a place to sleep in; and made our beds on the other side of the very same bush, near which the Hottentots had encamped themselves round about a large fire. We had also till this instant slept there close by the side of each other, and of our fire-arms; but notwithstanding the danger there was to be apprehended from scorpions and serpents, and the inconvenience of lying on a plot of ground which was uneven and full of stumps of trees, we now found it more adviseable to creep close into the bush, and keep our guns ready in our laps; for to go at this time from hence to the waggon would have been extremely dangerous, and to push in among the Hottentots near the fire would have had a cowardly appearance, and, in fact, would have been, without a metaphor, a dirty piece of business. During all this the lion, according to all appearance, had that very night drank out of the well, which was hardly a stone's throw from us; though it was either not hungry enough, or else had not sufficient courage to attack us.

On

1775.  
December.

On the 19th the thermometer was at 60 degrees, and the same day at twelve o'clock it rose to 84, and at three in the afternoon to 95, being hung under the tilt of the waggon. I found about this spot a kind of *purslain*, somewhat tougher than the common cultivated sort, and having very small leaves one or two inches long, and those of a light green colour, (*foliis linearibus, marginib. ad rachid. revolutis, caule herbaceo, superius subquadrangl.*) As I had brought with me a pint and a half of vinegar, in case of our being seized with an inflammation of the brain, proceeding from our heads being struck by the perpendicular rays of the sun, I put a small quantity of it, together with a little sugar, to the herb above-mentioned, in order to treat myself with a little sallad, which, however, was tough enough, and ate almost like grass. One of my Boshies-men, who saw me prepare this dish, gave me to understand by signs, that I began at the wrong end of the plant, and dug up the root of it, which, though I ate it raw, was better tasted than the plant itself; being nearly shaped like a carrot, and of a white colour, a palm and a half in length, and an inch and a half in diameter, (*fusiformis, albid. sesquipalm. diametro sesquiunciali.*)

On another occasion I learned from this Hottentot, who, contrary to the custom of his nation, was very communicative, that the root of the *da-t'kai*, (p. 27. of this Volume) a shrub of the *mesembryanthemum* kind pretty common here, eaten raw, was, in fact, very well-tasted, yielding a sweetish substance, which might be sucked or otherwise separated from the more woody and fibrous parts in which it was contained. I set the greater value upon by this discovery, as some events

1775.  
December.

events might easily happen, which might make it necessary for us to have recourse to this plant, in order to keep us from starving. The African colonists, who are not near so forward to investigate the virtues of the plants of this country as by encroachments to increase their property in the country itself, were as yet ignorant of the use of this root; neither were the Hottentots, who followed me from *Zwellendam* acquainted with it; and the Boshies-men themselves were at this time too idle to dig for the root, when they could gorge themselves, as it were, with flesh.

The Hottentot who was our best shot, had turned out this morning before dawn to go a hunting, together with two of the others one; of whom was constantly his armour-bearer, in order that he himself, being disengaged from the incumbrance of his arms, might have a steadier hand, and be more at liberty, when he found it requisite, to creep on all fours and discharge his piece, or else in cases of danger to make a precipitate retreat from the vengeance of the enraged animal. At times, likewise, he often sent the man who carried his arms to reconnoitre the beast, and follow its traces.

The three Hottentots I mentioned as having gone out in the morning, came back in the evening, and set themselves down quite spent by the well to cool themselves. I asked them several times, if they had shot any thing? to which after some time they answered, "to be sure there was a great scarcity of game in these parts;" and at length gave me indirectly to understand, that they had shot two rhinoceroses. I mention this trifling incident in so circumstantial a manner, as it affords an instance of that species of reserve peculiar

1775.  
December.

peculiar to the Hottentot nation, which several colonists had told me of, and I myself have likewise experienced. When, for instance, any thing remarkable happens, a Hottentot endeavours to avoid, if he can, mentioning it for some days; and when at length he does speak of it, it is with a kind of circumlocution, or, as the colonists call it, with a *draij*, a sort of twist or winding. And indeed, for the most part, the Hottentot comes out with his intelligence so late, that instead of being of any use, it serves only to vex one. In the mean time, however, I was extremely well pleased with the news of the rhinoceroses being shot; and only wished that my Hottentots had been so kind as to have told me in time, that I might have gone back with them and seen the animals alive. However, I have had an opportunity of this kind several times since.

On the 20th betimes in the morning, Mr. IMMELMAN and I rode to the spot where the rhinoceroses lay, and were attended by four of our Hottentots.

In our road we saw a great many *quaggas* and *baribeests*, and at the same time chased a *wood-swine*, but chiefly spent our time in reconnoitring a herd of *elk-antilopes* (antilope oryx, Vol. II. Plate I.) so that we did not arrive at the spot where the rhinoceroses lay till ten o'clock.

It was about the same time the day before that these beasts were killed, each of them with one single shot, which penetrated into the very middle of their lungs. They lay at the distance of about a mile from each other, both of them being prostrate on their belly and knees, with their hind legs brought forwards, and supporting their bodies on each side. The first thing I did was to draw

1775.  
December.

draw and take the dimensions of the lesser of these animals in this position, which I afterwards, from several others that I had an opportunity of seeing alive, altered to the attitude of walking.

In order the more readily to form an idea of the shape of this animal, and the mutual proportion of its parts, the reader may turn to the figure annexed in Plate III. Vol. II. To this purpose he must represent to himself the lesser of these beasts, eleven feet and a half long, seven feet high, and twelve feet in the girt. And when besides this he considers, that, with respect to size, it ranks among four-footed animals the third from the elephant; and, excepting the horns, has been hitherto absolutely unknown, with other circumstances which will easily occur to his reflection, he will, perhaps, in some measure, be able to conceive, what a feast the sight and examination of this creature must have been to a naturalist.

The circumstance which first and chiefly excited my attention was, that in the hide of this beast there were none of those plaits and folds, which we find in the descriptions and figures published of the *rhinoceros bicornis*, and which give it the appearance of being covered with a harness. It was only on the hide of the lesser of these animals that we could observe a small fold or plait, and that merely at the nape of the neck; but this seemed to proceed from the position that we found it in, viz. with the head leaning against the ground, by which means it was carried somewhat backwards.

Considering it in other respects, the hide was half an inch thick on the back, but somewhat thicker on the sides,

1775.  
December.



though less compact there. The surface of it was scabrous and knotty, and not much differing from that of the elephant, but of a closer texture; and when it is dry, extremely hard. It was of an ash-colour, excepting about the groin, where the skin is not near so thick, but is almost quite smooth, and of the colour of a man's flesh.

The muzzle or nose converges to a point, not only above and beneath, but likewise very visibly on the sides, nearly as it does in the tortoise. The upper lip is somewhat longer than the lower. The eyes are small, and sunk in the head.

Though the horns have been diffusely described by others, yet, in order that the reader may form a just and adequate idea of them, it is requisite in this place to make various additions to the descriptions already given. They are of the same shape, and in some measure of the same size in both sexes; yet it appeared to me, that the size of them was not always proportioned to the body. Neither, indeed, is there any constant proportion observable between the foremost horn and the hindmost, though the foremost is always the larger of the two.

The hindmost, especially in the older animals, is most commonly observed to be worn away in different parts, which is never the case in the foremost and larger one. This, in some measure, confirms the assertion of the Hottentots and the colonists, that the rhinoceros makes use of the shorter one only for the digging up of the various roots, which are said to compose great part of its food; it being endued with the power of turning the larger horn at that time, on one side out of the way. I was even informed, that

1775.  
December.

that in the live rhinoceros the horns were so mobile and loose, that when the animal walks carelessly along, one may see its horns waggle about, and hear them clash and clatter against each other. What seems to add farther confirmation to this account, concerning the truth of which, however, I am not without my doubts in many respects, is an excavation or cavity in the base of the horns; particularly that of the foremost, which, like a glenoid cavity, by means of certain articulations, is adapted to, and incloses a round protuberance of the scull. It was with great difficulty that we cut the horns away from it through the sinews and cartilages, by means of which they were attached to the cranium, and of which the remains are still to be seen on the horns I have brought home with me. Had I previously had the least hint of the horns being moveable, I should certainly not have omitted to investigate the degree of force with which the muscles and tendons, intended for the strengthening of the joint, and keeping the horn steady and erect, were capable of acting. Of the elder of the rhinoceroses which we had just shot, and whose horns I have preserved in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, the hindmost horn is very evidently much worn away. I have likewise found the same appearance on another rhinoceros-horn, which was put up for sale at the Cape. But in the younger animal, which I dissected, and which I particularly allude to in the present description, no marks of this kind were observable. The shape of the rhinoceros-horns are universally conical, with the tips inclined somewhat backwards, as is shewn in the annexed plate; and may be seen still more distinctly in a

1775.  
December.

figure given by Mr. KLEIN, which represents a pair of rhinoceros-horns of the natural size.

With respect to their substance and texture, these horns seem to consist of parallel horny fibres, the extreme points of which on the lower half, especially on the posterior part of the foremost horn, and on the greater part of the hindmost, project in many places; so that the surface in those parts is full of inequalities, and in some places feels as rough as a brush. The upper part of the horns is smooth and plain, like those of oxen.

The anterior horn belonging to the lesser of the rhinoceroses that we had shot, was a foot in length, and five inches over at the base. On the larger of these animals this horn was half as long again, and seven inches in diameter measured at the same part. This rhinoceros, however, did not exceed the other in bulk, in proportion to the size of its horns. Indeed, in the cabinet of the Royal Academy of Sciences, there is preserved a pair of horns belonging to the *rhinoceros bicornis*, the foremost of which is twenty-two inches in length, and the hindmost sixteen. The distance between these horns is scarcely two inches. They differ likewise from the horns I saw in Africa, and from those I brought with me, in being of a lighter colour and straight, and at the same time flat on the sides; so that the hindmost horn particularly, has pretty sharp edges on the upper part, both before and behind. These horns most probably came from the northern parts of Africa, as they were purchased at Naples by Baron EMANUEL DE GEER during his travels, and were by him sent to his father,

ther, the late Marshal DE GEER, as an additional ornament to his noble museum, together with which they were presented by the Marshal's illustrious widow to the Royal Academy of Sciences.

1775-  
December.



This animal may be said to be totally destitute of hair, though there are a few scattered dark bristly hairs about an inch long on the edges of the ears, with a very few between and round about the horns. This is likewise the case at the tip of the tail. This is about an inch thick, diminishing by degrees from the root to the tip, which is somewhat enlarged in the fore part, and particularly in the back part, and at the same time rounded off, but is flattened at the sides. It is directly on the edges produced by this conformation, that there are to be seen some strong stiff hairs an inch, or an inch and a half in length. Such of them as stand towards this creature's hard and rough body, are visibly worn down and stunted.

The feet, as may be seen in the figure, are not much wider than the legs. In the fore parts they are furnished each with three hoofs, which do not project very much, and of which the middlemost is the largest and most circular. The soles of the feet, like those of the elephant, are covered with a thicker and more callous skin than the other parts; and are, if we except the edges, (which are composed of the hoofs) together with a fissure in the heel, somewhat of a circular form.

I chose the lesser of the rhinoceroses for the purpose of making the dissection, as well as a description and drawing of this animal. I and my people, making five in all, were not able to stir the carcase, when, with a view to get at it  
with

1775.  
December.

with greater convenience, I endeavoured to lay it on its back. This, however, proceeded in a great measure from the laziness of my Hottentots, and their backwardness to assist me. In the position, therefore, in which this unwieldy creature lay, we cut up its left side, and took a large slip from off its thick hide. This could not be effected without a great deal of trouble, and repeatedly whetting our knives afresh.

Though the animal had lain above twenty-four hours, and an ecchymosis was formed about the wound, yet the flesh had hitherto been preserved from putrefaction by the thickness of the hide. A piece of this flesh we broiled immediately, which tasted a good deal like pork, but in my opinion was much coarser. In the mean while, we cut through the ribs with an axe, and what with hacking and tearing together, we at last contrived to empty the cavity of the abdomen. I made drawings and descriptions of these parts, and took the dimensions of them as speedily as possible; after which we took out the diaphragm, and a naked Hottentot crept into the carcase, in order to take out the lungs and heart.

As the animal had received its death-wound by a shot in the large blood-vessels of the lungs, these parts were already affected with some degree of putridity. The lungs, liver and milt had not been long exposed to the open air, before they began to swell and effervesce. The violent heat of the sun at noon, the great drought, and the stench of the carcase, rendered this operation in a short time extremely dangerous as well as disgusting. In the mean while, I made the following observations.

The

The viscera of the rhinoceros bicornis, in my opinion, most resemble those of a horse. So that this animal, notwithstanding its being furnished with horns, by no means belongs to the ruminating tribe, but rather to the class of those whose fat is of a soft nature like lard, and not hard like tallow.

1775.  
December.



The stomach does not bear the least resemblance to that of a horse, but rather to that of a man or a hog. It was four feet in length, (as I have lately found in my notes, since I gave the description of this animal in the Swedish Transactions) and two feet in diameter; and to this viscus was annexed an intestinal tube of twenty-eight feet long, and six inches in diameter. This intestinal canal was terminated three feet and a half from the bottom by a large cœcum, if I may so call a viscus, which at its upper end was the same width as the stomach, viz. two feet, and above twice the length; that is eight feet and a half, lying on the spine of the back, and attached to it at both ends, after which it is contracted into a rectum six inches in width, and a foot and a half in length.

The kidneys were a foot and a half in diameter, and the milt scarcely a foot broad, but full four feet long. The heart was a foot and a half in length, and the breadth not much less. The right lobe of the lungs had an incision in it, but was in other respects undivided and entire, being two feet in length. The left was subdivided into two lobes, the smaller of which was next the base of the heart. The liver, when measured from right to left, was found to be three feet and a half in breadth; but in depth, or measuring from above downwards, as it hangs in the animal when  
this

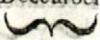
1775.  
December.



this latter is in a standing position, two feet and a half. It consisted of three larger perfectly distinct globes, almost equal in size, and of a small lobe besides, which projected to about a foot from the concave side of the liver, at the middle of its upper edge. No gall-bladder, or any traces of it, was to be observed. In this the rhinoceros resembles the horse.—Just before I finished the dissection of this animal, I opened its stomach, which was very much distended, in order to examine what it usually fed upon. The contents of the stomach were entirely without smell, and perfectly fresh and sweet, consisting of roots and small branches of trees masticated, some of which were found as big as the end of a man's finger. This creature, as it appeared, had likewise eaten a great quantity of succulent plants, among which I thought I recognized two or three that were harsh and prickly. The whole of this mass diffused around a very strong and not disagreeable aromatic odour, which in a great measure took off the stench which arose from the putrid viscera. Might it not be some peculiar herb, or, perhaps, the root only of an herb, with which I was entirely unacquainted, which produced the greatest part of the aromatic flavour? In the excrements of this animal, which were four inches in diameter, and in other respects resemble those of a horse, though they are of a much drier nature, there is usually seen a quantity of bark and fibres of trees, a circumstance that the hunters pay attention to; and by that means are able to distinguish it from the dung of the hippopotamus, an animal that feeds only on grass. I thrust my hand into this creature's mouth, which was half open, and found the tongue perfectly soft, which

Which is in direct contradiction to the common notion, viz. *Quod lambendo trucidat*, (that he kills by licking with his tongue.) I was likewise not a little astonished to find no fore-teeth in any of the three carcaffes of the rhinoceros, although one of these beasts seemed to be old; and, in fact, this animal has little room for fore-teeth, as the mouth goes off so sharp at the fore part, that in that place it is only an inch and a half broad. Besides, it has no occasion for any teeth there, as the lips, like the skin, are of that extreme hardness, that it is able to clip off the tops of plants and shrubs with them; and that with so much the greater ease, as the under jaw goes within the upper; so that this species of rhinoceros is probably capable of laying hold of its food with its lips, and conveying it into its mouth, with the same ease and dexterity as Dr. PARSONS observed in the common rhinoceros on a similar occasion.

1775.  
December.



At that time I could not possibly separate the flesh from the other bones, for the purpose of examining them. I was in hopes, however, that, by the time I returned, the eagles and wolves would save me that trouble. And this, indeed, was so far the case, that I had it in my power to carry home with me the cranium of the least rhinoceros, which I dissected, very nearly in a compleat state. It is from this skull that I had the annexed drawing made; and this part of the animal is of too much importance, for the description of it to be omitted here.

Both jaws being clapped together in their proper joint, give nineteen inches for the height of it in the back part; and, measured at the fore part from the tip of the nose,

1775.  
December.



fifteen; the length, measured from the tip of the nose to the hindmost part of the cranium, is in a direct line twenty-three inches, or something less than two feet.

With a view to avoid being prolix in my description, I refer my readers to the figure annexed in Plate III. of this volume, whence they will be able readily to conceive the proportion, &c. of the other parts. It is on the fore part of the *os frontis* that the lesser horn is fixed; it will, therefore, probably, be easily perceived from the annexed drawing, that the *sagittal suture* is obliterated, and that the *os occipitis* is terminated by a flat surface, along which it goes strait down in a perpendicular line to the condyloid processes, one of which is seen in the figure.

The cavity in which the brain is contained, does not extend much farther forward than the *ossa bregmatis*. The other bones by which it is encompassed are tolerably thick, so that this huge animal has but a small brain in proportion to its size; the cavity for containing this organ being barely six inches long, and four high, and being of an oval shape. In order to know the capacity of it with the greater certainty, we filled it with peas, which we afterwards measured, and found to amount barely to a quart. With a view to discover the proportion between the brain of the rhinoceros and that of a man, I likewise filled a middle sized human scull with peas, and found that nearly three pints were requisite for this purpose. On the other hand, the cavity of the nose in the rhinoceros is of a considerable size, which probably does not a little contribute to the quickness of this animal's scent. At least, physiologists use to explain the superiority of hounds in this particular,

1775.  
December.

cular, from the circumstance of the *tunica schneideriana*, or the nervous membrane appropriated to this sense, (when it is expanded and extricated from all the folds which it makes in the cavity of the nose, with the greatest art contrived for this purpose,) being so extensive as to cover the whole body of the animal; while on the other hand, this membrane, in the human species, is capable of covering only the head.

Six *dentes molares* only, or grinders, were observed on either side of each jaw, belonging to the two oldest of the rhinoceroses shot by us, and five only in the least or youngest, as the annexed drawing of its cranium shews; yet quite back in the mouth we discerned the marks of two more on each side, the foremost of which had begun to make its appearance, but the hindmost was almost entirely included in its socket. Hence it follows, that an aged and full-grown rhinoceros has fourteen teeth in each jaw, in all twenty-eight.

In the anterior part of the *os palati*, this animal appears to have a tooth-like process, which in the skull that I brought home with me is lost. Considering the distance of it from the lower jaw, it should seem that it can hardly serve any purposes of a tooth. I have to thank M. PALLAS for this piece of intelligence; who, when I had transmitted to him this engraving, was so good as to send me the beautiful figures of the cranium of a rhinoceros, transmitted to him by M. CAMPER for the *Acta Petropolitana*.

The dotted lines drawn about the cranium, show pretty nearly the situation of the horns and lips.

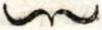
1775.  
December.

As I have mentioned above that the rhinoceros may be killed by a single shot, it follows that the hide of this animal is not so impenetrable as has been supposed. BONNIUS has long ago remarked, that this beast is usually killed with powder and ball. M. DE BUFFON probably did not pay attention to this passage, when he asserted, on the authority of GERVAISE, that its hide cannot be penetrated by any ball, excepting only about the ears. To these, however, M. DE BUFFON seems, of his own free will, to have added the eyes and the belly. It is true, indeed, that leaden balls will sooner be flattened against the skin than pierce it; but that balls or cylinders made of iron (*des lingots de fer*) should not be able to make the least impression on it, seems to be another addition of M. DE BUFFON's, equally absurd with the former. It frequently becomes necessary for me to correct in this manner, the voluminous works of this illustrious author; which, indeed, merit this correction so much the more, as the errors in them, being in other respects not unfrequently dressed up in an elegant style, have, in fact, imposed on many with charms which ought to be the attendants on pure genuine truth only, and unadulterated nature. It is therefore probable, that the sportive genius of M. DE BUFFON, must at times have operated in imposing likewise on its owner; but I am willing to hope, that this gentleman being *by profession* the interpreter of nature and truth, will on this account see with the greater pleasure, any strictures and remarks which are necessary to preserve the science of nature from falsehood and error.

For

For this reason I shall proceed, without any farther ceremony, to inform the reader, that the hide of the rhinoceros, as well as that of the elephant, is capable of being penetrated by javelins and darts. I ordered one of my Hottentots to make a trial of this with his haffagai, on one of the dead rhinoceroses. Though his weapon was far from being in good order, and had no other sharpness than that it had received from the forge, yet, by means of a certain manoeuvre, it received such an impulsive force, as at the distance of five or six paces, to pierce through the thick hide of the animal half a foot deep into his body.

1775.  
December.



The Hottentot or Caffre hunters are accustomed to steal both upon the elephant and the rhinoceros while they are asleep, and give them several wounds at once. After this they follow the traces of the animal for one or more days, till it drops down with weakness or dies of its wounds. Generally, however, according to their own account, they poison one or two of their darts immediately, before they attack an animal of this size; in which case, they have no occasion to wait so many days, as they otherwise would, before their prey falls into their hands. A farmer told me, he had seen an elephant in this manner wounded and dead within twenty-four hours.

As to what regards the one-horned rhinoceros, M. DE BUFFON, in Tom. XI. changes his opinion three times in the space of a few pages. In page 177, without quoting his authority for it, M. DE BUFFON considers the hide as being so tough, as not to be penetrable either by the fire-arms or side-arms of the hunter, (*ni du fer ni du feu du chasseur.*) In page 181 again in the notes he quotes, approves and much commends the account given by M. MOURS relative to this point, which

1775.  
December.



which yet is in contradiction with the former. This, however, he seems again to have forgot, when, in page 195, (without producing any authority for it) he assures us, that javelins (*les javelots* & *les lances*) are not able to pierce this animal's side.

M. DE BUFFON, not content with asserting that the hide of the rhinoceros is impenetrable, in page 176, will not even allow it the least portion whatever of sensibility, (*privé de toute sensibilité*) and this merely without quoting any authority, or having any other foundation for the assertion, than what his own imagination has furnished him with. And yet, had M. DE BUFFON but paid a moderate degree of attention to the clear and distinct account drawn up by Dr. PARSONS in the *Phil. Transf.* which he himself has quoted, it would seem that he must have been of a different opinion. In that paper it is mentioned, that the rhinoceros emitted his penis, when he was tickled under the belly with a wisp of straw. M. DE BUFFON too remarks himself, that the rhinoceros is fond of wallowing in the mire like the hog: but I will leave it to others to judge, how this accords with the absolute insensibility he attributes to the hide. And, indeed, when even the thick hide of the elephant is affected by the stinging of flies, how can we suppose that of the rhinoceros to be absolutely insensible? Again, the skin at the bottom of a man's foot, though thicker than it is in other parts of the body, is nevertheless by no means void of sensibility. Moreover, the skin of the rhinoceros, however tough and close in its texture, has, at least about the groin, vessels, blood, and juices, adapted for the nourishment of insects, which, indeed, actually do nourish them; this beast being infested with a  
kind

kind of *acari*, which I have discovered on its pubis and groin, and have drawn up an account of them, inserted in the VIIth Tome of *Memoires sur les Insectes*. Neither does the thickness of this animal's hide prevent it from perspiring.

1775.  
December.

This creature, which at all other times appears to be of a grey colour, soon becomes black when it is hard hunted. This proceeds from the dust and dried mud sticking to the animal's skin, and moistened by sweat. Besides that I have been assured of this fact by others, I think I once myself saw a manifest instance of it, in the case of a rhinoceros, which was pursued by some other sportsmen, and very unexpectedly passed within the distance of forty or fifty paces of my waggon, fortunately for me, without perceiving it, or doing it any damage. This beast was much darker coloured than any I ever saw, the number of which, however, in all, did not exceed eight.

From the figure of the rhinoceros referred to above, and from the description I have already given, it follows, that M. DE BUFFON, in his notes to page 186, accuses KOLBE, without any foundation, of having described the lesser horn as being placed in a strait line behind the other, and upon the animal's forehead. *It is impossible, says he, that the two horns should be placed so far from each other; for in the horns which are preserved in SIR HANS SLOANE'S museum, there is only the distance of three inches between the larger horn and the smaller.* In fact, this eminent naturalist seems rather too hasty in the foregoing remark, and forgets that every animal's nose is placed near its forehead; so that while one horn is fixed on the rhinoceros's nose, the other may be very well fixed, and actually

1775.  
December.

ually is so, on the forehead. A figure so plain and simple as KOLBE's (vide the French edition) might have sufficed to prevent mistakes on this subject.

In fine, it is necessary to inform my readers, that what M. DE BUFFON advances concerning the copulation of the one-horned rhinoceros, viz. that it is performed *croupe à croupe*, is not in the least applicable to the rhinoceros bicornis; but in all probability, this opinion is not true with regard to either species, as in the two-horned rhinoceros which I examined, the penis was placed as forward under the belly as it is in a horse; though, considered with relation to the different bulk of the two animals, it is much shorter. In the animal which I dissected it was no more than seven or eight inches in length, as may be seen in the specimen I brought home with me. In a rhinoceros, which had the appearance of being old, it was not much larger. M. DE BUFFON, after Dr. PARSONS, describes the penis in the one-horned species as being still shorter. Besides, he does not say a word concerning the situation of this member, but founds his conjecture on the subject of this animal's copulation, merely on the circumstance of its having been observed to bend its penis backwards when it staled, in which direction consequently the urine was emitted. But this, perhaps, was owing to an accidental and vicious conformation; or it might be done out of cleanliness, especially as we know that the *rhinoceros bicornis*, at least has a very acute smell, and seems to love cleanliness, from the circumstance of its chusing certain places near the bushes to stale upon. It is possible, indeed, that the animal may have a kind of *musculus erector*, for the purpose of occasionally altering

altering the direction of this member. But I am afraid of tiring my reader's patience, by dwelling so long on the subject of this quadruped; I shall therefore at present only make mention of it, just as it may happen to occur in the course of my journal. Mr. IMMELMAN likewise was at length tired of standing by and seeing me dissect this beast, and therefore set out before us on his road home, with a view to repose between whiles, and cool himself under some shady tree. In order to go, as it appeared to him, a nearer way, he rode over a hill overgrown with bushes. From this spot a rhinoceros rushed out upon him, and he would certainly have been trampled to death by this huge creature, or else have been taken up by it on its horns, and, together with his horse, thrown up into the air, had not this latter in his fright made a sudden start, and by several side leaps carried his rider through the bushes, out of the sight and scent of the animal.

Here it must be observed, that the rhinoceros's eyes are sunk into its head, and are but small when compared to the bulk of its body; on which account, it is reported to see but indistinctly, and that only straight forwards. But to make amends for this deficiency in sight, its organs of smelling and hearing are so much the more acute; at the least noise, therefore, more than usual, this creature, taking the alarm and pricking up its ears, stands clapping with them and listening. Above all things one must take care, even when one is at a great distance, not to get to the windward of it; for in that case, it seldom fails directly to follow the scent, and attack the object of its pursuit, as it was very near doing by Mr. IMMELMAN. This gentleman,

1775.  
December.



having with great difficulty made his escape, struck into a by-path, in order, after passing through a little dale, to get into the strait and plain road. In this road he overtook me, on a spot whither I had retired to screen myself and my horse from the burning rays of the sun, and was overlooking my drawings and memorandums. He was still somewhat out of breath in consequence of his adventure, at the time he gave me an account of it; and I, for my part, could not help in some measure envying his good fortune, in having at so cheap a rate seen this huge unwieldy animal alive, together with the motions it made in the cumbersome hide in which it was incased: but, indeed, he himself had seen so little of it, that we soon came to an agreement to ride up together on the other side of the very hill, in which he had just been put to flight by the rhinoceros. From hence we thought we should be able to descry this creature on the plain; but that we might not be betrayed by the effluvia of our bodies, in case he should return again to the thicket, we threw some dust into the air, in order to determine more accurately which way the wind was, and thus be able to direct our course precisely in opposition to it. And indeed, we had not been long arrived at the spot before my horse began to be a little shy, and at length was quite restive, behaving just as he had done before when I first rode him up to the carcases of the two rhinoceroses. This circumstance I took notice of to my companion, considering it as a sign that, in all probability, there was a rhinoceros near the spot; but he went on, saying, it was impossible, as it did not strike him just then, that there might be more than one

one in that vicinity. We therefore advanced still nearer, till being but fifteen paces off, I heard a rustling noise like that of an animal raising itself up leisurely on its legs. Immediately upon this appeared a rhinoceros, with its horn projecting over one of the bushes. I now thought it high time for us to turn back immediately, and made signs to my companion, that it might be done as silently as possible. He too had perceived the snout of this animal, and we rode away as softly as possible; our horses' feet, nevertheless, made a crackling noise among the dry branches which had fallen from the trees, and with which the narrow paths between the bushes were every where covered. On this account, we did not neglect during our retreat to look behind us, in order that we might make off as fast as possible, in case the rhinoceros should have been alarmed by the noise, and have been induced to pursue us. What I call paths were merely tracks made by the buffaloes and rhinoceroses forcing their way through the thickets; but among these likewise we found many blind paths, i. e. such as terminated on a sudden in some high and impenetrable bush. Into a place of this sort we might in our flight easily have strayed, and there have been caught by the rhinoceros, as it were, in a trap. This adventure made us afterwards suspect, that every bush harboured a rhinoceros; and induced us for some time to give up all thoughts of reconnoitring among the bushes with so much assurance, an animal that did not appear as if it was to be trifled with.

I think we may infer from the preceding relation, that this rhinoceros was different from that which put Mr. IMMEL-

1775.  
December.

MAN to flight; as likewise, that this latter did not pursue us, by reason that, in consequence of our having rode up to it full in the face of the wind, it could not get scent of us; besides, this animal did not hear our talking nor the crackling of the branches, with a sufficient degree of certainty to engage it to make an attack upon us: and in fine, it appears, that it had with great forecast chosen a thick and high bush, by way of entrenchment, on that side of the bush, from whence the wind prevented it from getting scent of any thing. If I may form any conclusion from my horse's stopping, it would seem, that he had got scent of this beast as far off as the distance of forty or fifty paces, though the wind was very moderate from that quarter.

On our way homewards (for so we always called our waggon, or encampment in the desert) we came within pistol-shot of a herd of *elk-antilopes*, probably the same with those we had given chase to in the morning without success; but what was very singular, they at this time hardly shewed the least fear. The males, which were of the size of an ordinary galloway, appeared much more bulky and corpulent than their females, and seemed to run rather heavily.

In the evening we received an unexpected visit. This was from eight colonists, who were come hither from *Camdebo* with four waggons, and had brought with them two of their wives, and a couple of children. They were going to the salt-pit before-mentioned near *Zwartkops-river*, in order to fetch salt from thence; but having been told by us of the violent drought they would meet with in their way thither, part of them only went with two waggons, that being fewer of them, they might be less liable to suffer

1775.  
December.

fer for want of water. These people informed us, that that very day they had chanced to awake a rhinoceros just by the road side; but that the beast, probably scared by the noise and bustle it heard from different quarters at once, ran by them without doing them any hurt. They related to me, however, an instance, in which a rhinoceros had run up to a waggon, and carried it a good way along with him on his snout and horns. They likewise informed us, that the distemper among the horses had already begun to commit ravages in the district of *Camdebo*, where, however, it otherwise seldom used to make its appearance till the month of April. The reason of this, probably, was the universal drought that prevailed this year.

CHAP.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Journey from Quammedacka to Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte.*

1775.  
December.

ON the 21<sup>st</sup> at nine in the morning we left the pool at *Quammedacka*, which we had by this time drank dry, and arrived at noon at *Little Visch-rivier*, where we again pitched our tents. We here found a herd of spring-boks, a couple of which we shot. At five o'clock this morning the thermometer was at 52 degrees, at twelve at 82, and at half past three at 95 degrees. The evening was very much overcast. In this tract of country there was a great drought on both sides of the river, but still greater farther on towards the north, where the soil was more gravelly, and produced a greater quantity of succulent plants. In the spaces between these, besides shrubs and bushes, there was sometimes to be found a little dry grass; every where else, the ground was as dry and bare as a high road with a clayey bottom. Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, we heard the roaring of a lion; and though it only roared twice, the animals we had with us were very restless the whole night throughout.

On

On the 22d early in the morning, we crossed Little *Visch-rivier*, it being supposed, that where we then were, it would not be so well worth our while to look after the *bippotamus*, or sea-cow, an animal that is bigger than the rhinoceros, and lives both in the water and on dry ground, (vid. Plate IV. of this volume.) This, in fact, having seen the rhinoceros, was what I now chiefly laid out for.

1775.  
December.

Between nine and ten o'clock, being on our march, we saw two large lions. They were about three hundred paces from us, in a little vale. The instant they perceived us, they betook themselves to flight. Being very desirous to have a nearer view of these animals, we rode in pursuit of them, all the while shouting and calling out after them. Upon this they mended their pace till they got down to the side of the river, which we had just crossed, and there hid themselves in the thickets. Urged by their curiosity, two of our Hottentots likewise followed behind us, one armed with a couple of hassagais, and the other with a gun. We ourselves were without any arms whatever, but I imagine we ran no risk in this chase, as we could easily have turned back and fetched our arms, in case the lions had thought proper to pursue us. In running they had a kind of sideling pace, like that of a dog, accompanied now and then with a slight bound. Their necks were all the while somewhat raised, and they seemed to look askance at us over their shoulders. One of them had a mane, and consequently was a male; but both of them were nearly of an equal size, and seemed to be considerably higher and longer than our saddle-horses, which were of the size of common galloways. Neither our horses, nor several gazels which were

1775.  
December.



were on the spot, seemed in the least afraid of these lions, though they were as near them as we were. As the lion seldom or never attacks his prey openly, it seems that he does not strike the other animals with any high degree of terror, except when they take the scent of him, which nature has rendered highly disgustful to them.

This day likewise we scared a male ostrich away from its nest, which was in the middle of the plains. This nest, however, consisted of nothing but the ground itself, on which the eggs lay scattered and loose. Hence it follows, that the ostrich does not leave its eggs to be hatched by the sun, but likewise, at least in this part of Africa, sits upon them herself: we may also infer, that the male and the female sit upon them alternately. The Hottentots too assured me of this fact, which has hitherto been unknown to naturalists.

So that THEVENOT is in the right when he asserts, that the ostrich lives in monogamy, or with one female; though he is quite alone in this assertion: and the practice is contrary to the custom of the larger kind of birds.

I do not pretend by any means to determine the exact number of eggs laid by this bird; the number of those we at this time found was only eleven; they were all fresh, and probably were to have had several more added to them. Another time two of my Hottentots scared another ostrich away from its nest, out of which they took fourteen eggs, and brought them to me, having left some behind, which did not seem to them to be quite so fresh; so that perhaps sixteen, eighteen, or twenty, is the highest amount of the number of eggs laid by this bird: and yet it appears to me,  
that

that it must be very difficult for the ostrich to cover so many with its body. A brood of young ones, scarcely two feet high, which I saw in the district of *Roode-Zand*, seemed to me to amount to some such number; but the ostrich-chicks which I had taken on the 16th of this month at *Kurekoi-ku*, were about a foot in height. May we not likewise conclude from hence, that the ostriches in Africa have no set times for laying their eggs?

1775.  
December.



Some of my more observing readers may, perhaps, wonder how I am able to assure them, that it was a male ostrich which I scared away from the nest. To this I answer, that in all this part of Africa it is looked upon as an indisputable fact, that such of these birds which are males, carry white feathers in their tails and wings, while their backs and bellies are covered with black. The females, on the contrary, carry black feathers only in their tails and wings, while those on their bodies are of an ash-colour. This likewise accords with the dissections made of this bird in Europe, (Vide BUFFON, p. 429.) What serves farther to convince me, that the cock ostrich assists the hen in hatching her eggs, is, that in the nest which I have been just speaking of, there were found several white feathers, as well as a number of black ones, both of which would naturally fall into it whilst the birds were sitting. Nature, perhaps, has found it the more necessary to order both sexes of the ostrich mutually to assist each other in hatching their eggs, as the frame of their bodies is large, and they are furnished with many stomachs, and at the same time are craving beyond many others of the feathered race; so that they could not bear the usual course of fasting during the whole time

1775.  
December.



of fitting, nearly so well as the females of other birds. The authors who have described the young of the ostrich, as being covered with small grey feathers, are perfectly in the right. With a plumage of this colour, even their necks and thighs are clothed; parts, which in the full-grown birds, are destined to be naked, while the rest of their bodies are adorned with feathers. The most beautiful and curled of these compose the tail of the ostrich, and consequently it is chiefly for the purpose of adorning our heads with them, that we deprive this bird of its life or freedom.

In this colony, however, I did not see ostrich feathers made any other use of, than to brush away the flies; for which purpose, whisks were made of them of a considerable length as well as breadth, with which a slave or two were employed in driving away these animals from the table, while the family were at their meals. The Hottentots, who eat all sorts of flesh, eat likewise that of the ostrich; but the eggs I have seen used by the colonists, and that even at the Cape, for pancakes and aumelets. While we were travelling through the desert, we found it answer best to supple our throats with them just before we took our chocolate or tea; and likewise to clarify our coffee with them, or else to stew them, for want of pans, in our porridge-pot, having previously thrown into it a little fat; a dish I had learnt to prepare in Sweden by the name of *oeufs perdus*.

Ostriches eggs are eatable, indeed, in all these ways, but not equal to hen's eggs. They are, as it were, of a coarser nature and thicker consistence, and at the same time

time more filling and luscious. One of the largest shells of the ostriches eggs, kept in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, I found, on examination, to weigh eleven ounces, to be six inches and a half in depth, and to hold five pints and a quarter liquid measure. It is of the shape of a common egg. I never found the weight of the fresh eggs exceed this in any extraordinary proportion; so that when M. DE BUFFON (in page 426, 427) computes the weight of one of these eggs at fifteen pounds, this bold assertion of his seems to require to be mentioned, only in order to be confuted.— I have already, in Vol. I. page 130, related the method of hunting the ostriches in this country; but that this bird contents itself barely with hiding its head, when it finds it cannot make its escape, is a matter which I do not remember ever to have heard mentioned at the Cape; but even were it a fact, still PLINY's explication of it is not more absurd than M. DE BUFFON's manner of accounting for it, l. c. page 448. Children, indeed, who play at hide and seek, are apt to imagine that they are concealed, when they cover their heads, so that they themselves cannot see. I have likewise frequently observed turkey-poults merely hide their heads, so as not to be able to see any thing, when they were warned by their mother's cries of the hawk's approach. How then can one expect a greater degree of consideration in a bird, in other respects very stupid, and which is in danger of its life?

M. DE BUFFON, page 448, calls the skin of this creature very thick; but in this respect it is but equal at the best to goat's or calf's-skin; so that how far the Arabians can use

1775.  
December.

it for harneffes and shields (l. c. page 443) does not seem to deserve a ferious investigation.

The cry of the ostrich, according to the description I have had given me of it in Africa, in some respects resembles the roaring of the lion, but is shorter, or, in other words, not drawn out to so great a length. In this case, its cry must necessarily be hoarse and rough, as well as fill the breast of the hearer with anxiety and terror; and consequently the prophet MICAH, chap. i. ver. 8, has not unaptly compared it to the voice of a mourner; if in fact by the word וענה in this and other places of holy writ, the ostrich is meant, and not a kind of owl.

The young of this bird have no cry at all; one, at least, a foot and a half high, which on my return home-wards I brought with me alive to the *Cape* all the way from *Honing-klip*, did not, during the whole time, viz. twenty-four days, let us hear any thing of it. This was trampled to death by my horse, just before my departure from the *Cape*, otherwise it might have easily been brought to *Europe*. It ate a great deal, and was not nice in its food.

There were several large tame ostriches in the governor's menagerie at the *Cape*. Without seeming to be impeded by their weight, they would run along with any body whatsoever, and would moreover jump up and perch upon the shoulders of all such as would suffer it. In consequence of having made this observation, as well as of similar instances to be found in authors, I cannot doubt, but that ostriches might be brought to bear burdens and the like, so as to become useful to mankind.

The

The instance which is given us by ADANSON of a young ostrich, not properly trained up to this employ, is therefore not capable of raising in me the same doubts as are entertained by M. DE BUFFON on this subject. And yet we read in this illustrious author, l. c. that FIRMIUS, who reigned in Egypt in the third century, was drawn by ostriches; and that in *Joar*, in Africa, an Englishman was seen riding on an ostrich, on which he used to take journies, &c. I have conversed with yeomen at the Cape, who had brought up ostriches so tame, that they went loose to and from the farm, and were obliged to seek their own food; but at the same time were so voracious as to swallow chickens whole, and trample hens to death, in order to tear them to pieces afterwards and eat them up. At a certain farm they were obliged to kill one of these ostriches, as he had taken to trampling sheep to death. Quere, Does not the ostrich eat snakes likewise?

1775.  
December.

These large birds were, as it appeared to me, chiefly to be found in such tracts of country as partook of the properties of the *carrow*, and produced succulent plants. I saw but one of them in the *four* district, as it is called, of *Lange Kloof*; but this might very probably, like the elephant in the same district, of which I have already given an account, Vol. I. page 315, have got out of its latitude.

Another kind of large bird, which I have mentioned before, as being in the governor's menagerie, viz. the *casuary*, was not a native of Africa.

This had been a very warm day, and though it might seem that I ought by this time to have been inured to heat, yet in consequence of it, I was seized with a violent headache.

1775.  
December.

ach. I found great relief, however, by washing my head in running water in great *Visch-rivier*. Two of my Hottentots likewise complained of being affected in the same manner, but were soon made easy by giving them a little hemp to smoke. I had forgot to look at the thermometer this day till ten o'clock in the evening. Even at that late hour it was at 78. At dark there fell a few drops of rain. This night we did not hear the lions roar in the least.

Very early on the 23d we proceeded again on our journey, to look out for the *sea-cows* near some other pit belonging to great *Visch-rivier*. There was now again a great scarcity of meat in the waggon; for which reason my Hottentots began to grumble, and reminded me, that we ought not to waste so much of our time in looking after insects and plants, but give a better look out after the game. At the same time they pointed to a neighbouring dale over-run with wood, at the upper edge of which, at the distance of a mile and a quarter from the spot where we then were, they had seen several buffaloes. Accordingly we went thither, but though our fatigue was lessened by our Hottentots carrying our guns for us up a hill, yet we were quite out of breath and overcome by the heat of the sun, before we got up to it. Yet, what even now appears to me a matter of wonder is, that as soon as we had got a glimpse of the game, all this languor left us in an instant. In fact, we each of us strove to fire before the other, so that we seemed entirely to have lost sight of all prudence and caution. When we advanced to within twenty or thirty paces of the beast, and consequently were, perhaps, likewise in some degree actuated by our fears, we discharged our

our

1775.  
December.

our pieces pretty nearly at the same time; while the buffalo, which was upon rather lower ground than we were, behind a thin scrambling bush, seemed to turn his head round in order to make towards us. In the mean while, however, the moment we had discharged our guns, we had the pleasure to see him fall, and directly afterwards run down into the thickest part of the wood. This induced us to hope, that our shot had proved mortal: for which reason, we had the imprudence to follow him down into the close thickets, where, luckily for us, we could get no farther. We had, however, as we found afterwards, only hit the hindmost part of the chine, where the balls, which lay at the distance of three inches from each other, had been shivered to pieces against the bones. In the mean while our temerity, which chiefly proceeded from hurry and ignorance, was considered by the Hottentots as a proof of spirit and intrepidity hardly to be equalled; on which account, from that instant, they ever after appeared to entertain an infinitely higher opinion of our courage than they had ever done before. Several of our Hottentots now came to us, and threw stones down into the dale, though without success, in order to find out by the bellowings of the beast, whither he had retired: afterwards, however, he seemed to have plucked up his courage, for he came up at last out of the dale of his own accord to the skirts of the wood, and placed himself so as to have a full view of us on the spot, where we were resting ourselves somewhat higher up: his intention was, in all probability, and in the opinion of our old sportsmen, to revenge himself on us, if we had not happened to see him in time,  
and

1775.  
December.



and fired at him directly. What, perhaps, in some measure put a stop to his boldness was, that we stood on higher ground than he did: for several veteran sportsmen have assured me of it as a fact, that they know from experience, that the buffaloes do not willingly venture to ascend any hill or eminence in order to attack any one. The third shot, which afterwards was observed to have entered at the belly, was fatal. This occasioned the buffalo to take himself down again into the vale, dying the ground and bushes all the way he went with his blood. Though still hot upon the chase, yet we advanced with the greatest caution, accompanied by two of our Hottentots, through the thin and more pervious part of the wood, where the buffalo had taken refuge. He was advancing again in order to attack some of us, when Mr. IMMELMAN, from the place where he was posted, shot him in the lungs. Notwithstanding this, he had still strength enough left to make a circuit of a hundred and fifty paces, before we heard him fall: during his fall, and before he died, he bellowed in a most stupendous manner; and this death-song of his inspired every one of us with joy, on account of the victory we had gained: and so thoroughly steeled is frequently the human heart against the sufferings of the brute creation, that we hastened forwards, in order to enjoy the pleasure of seeing the buffalo struggle with the pangs of death. I happened to be the foremost amongst them; but think it impossible for anguish, accompanied by a savage fierceness, to be painted in stronger colours than they were in the countenance of this buffalo. I was within ten steps of him when he perceived me, and, bellowing, raised himself suddenly again on his legs. I had  
reason

reason to believe since, that I was at the time very much frightened; for before I could well take my aim, I fired off my gun, and the shot missed the whole of his huge body, and only hit him in the hind legs, as we afterwards discovered by the size of the ball. Immediately upon this I flew away like lightning, in order to look out for some tree to climb up into.

1775.  
December.



Notwithstanding the tedious prolixity it might occasion me to be guilty of, I thought the best and readiest method of giving my reader an idea of the nature of this animal, and of the method of hunting it, as well as of other contingent circumstances, would be to adduce an instance or two of what occurred during the chase.

My Hottentots cut up the buffalo with their usual alacrity and ardour; but as they had a great way to carry the flesh to the waggon, they took it thither in a rather unusual way. This was as follows: they cut out large slips of flesh whole and entire, with holes in the middle, wide enough for them to put their heads and arms through, and loaded themselves with it in this manner before, behind, and on every side of them; the meat all the while dangling about their bodies in a manner ludicrous enough, though not much adapted to create an appetite in the spectator. In this way, their hands being entirely disengaged, excepting that each man carried a stick, they clambered up the brow of the hill that overhung the vale, and thus walked on towards the waggon, whither one might trace them all the way by the blood.

In the mean while the Hottentot, who was our principal shot, had, at no great distance from this place, shot

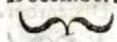
1775.  
December.

an *elk-antelope*, in consequence of which we repaired thither, in order to carry off the best and fattest part of the flesh. Before we got back to the waggon, darkness came on, with thunder and lightning; and, to add to the terror of the scene, we heard the lions roaring very loud. Indeed we had good reason to fear, that these wild beasts would throw themselves in our way, in order to share our prey with us. Neither should we, in fact, in the total darkness in which we were involved, have easily found our way back to the waggon, if the Hottentots whom we had left with it, had not been thoughtful and considerate enough to smack the large ox-whip from time to time by way of signal. At length, when we arrived at the plain where the waggon stood, we saw the fire they had made. We had hardly got home, however, before there came on a heavy shower of rain, which continued the greater part of the night, and put out our fire; while the tilt of our waggon was in great danger of being carried away by a violent south-east wind, with which the rain was accompanied; at the same time that the rain not only entered the waggon by the sides of the tilt, but likewise penetrated through the tilt-cloth, so that we were not a whit better sheltered there, than the Hottentots under their cloaks. During all this, we frequently heard the roaring of the lions, as well as the yelling of the hyænas; some of which latter stole away a strap belonging to the tackling of our waggon, together with a good quantity of the flesh which the Hottentots had hung up at the distance of a few paces from the spot where they lay.

This

This day the thermometer at five o'clock in the morning was at 74 degrees, precisely at noon at 99, and in the afternoon it rose to 100.

1775.  
December.



On the 24th I was induced to stay a little longer on this spot, by the hopes of shooting a *gnu*, which had been seen ranging by itself about this part of the country.

*T'Gnu* is the Hottentot name for a singular animal, which, with respect to its form, is between the horse and the ox. The size of it is about that of a common galloway, the length of it being somewhat above five, and the height of it rather more than four feet. The proportion of the parts to each other may be best seen by the figure given in Plate II. of this Volume, which represents this animal in the attitude into which it puts itself when it is going to butt any one; in consequence of which, we have been able to give a proper idea of the position of the horns, and the manner in which they lay, as it were, flat upon the head: while, on the contrary, in a drawing which accompanies Professor ALLAMAND's fine description of this creature, and which has been copied in a compilation, entitled, "*Nouvelle Description du Cap de B. Esperance*, the horns appear almost as if they grew out of the mane itself.

This animal is of a dark-brown colour all over, excepting the tail and mane, which are of a light-grey; the shag on the chin, under the lower jaw, and on the breast is black, as likewise are the stiff hairs which stand up erect on the forehead and upper part of the face. It is somewhat singular, that M. ALLAMAND, who was the first that described this species of animal from one which was brought from the Cape to Holland, found the colour of its mane and body

1775.  
December.

extremely different from what I have described it to be above, and from what I have observed in Africa, and which may likewise be seen on the skin of this animal I brought home with me. This difference probably proceeds from a diversity of age, climate, or other accidental circumstances.

At first sight one would be apt to pronounce, that the *gnu* most resembles the ox kind; but with respect to the following particulars, this beast may likewise be referred to the *capra* in general, or to the genus which the great zoologist, M. PALLAS, has separated from them under the denomination of *antilopes*.

1. The legs of the *gnu* are as small as those of the antilope, or the gazel kind; and, like them, have small fetlock-bones and hoofs.

2. The *gnu* resembles the antilopes and *capra* in its hair, inasmuch as this is short, just as it is in the hart kind. In its shag, the *gnu* resembles the *capra* more than oxen. With respect to its mane, it is manifestly distinct from these latter animals; but somewhat resembles another large *capra*, or antilope (the *antilope oryx*) by the colonists called the *Cape-elk*, (vide Plate I. of this Volume.) With regard to the tail, it does not in the least resemble an ox's tail, but rather that of a horse; and in this point somewhat coincides with another large antilope, viz. the hartbeest, (vide Plate I. of this Volume.) This last-mentioned antilope, according to the accounts given me by several persons at the Cape, falls upon its knees when it is going to butt any one; and probably the *gnu* resembles it in this point likewise, as M. ALLAMAND remarked of the *gnu* which was brought to  
I Holland,

Holland, that it sometimes fell on its knees, and butted against the ground.

1775:  
December.



3. The gnu, like many of the hart and antilope kind, has a visible *sinus*, or *porus sebaceus*, or *ceriferus*, below and just before each eye. This sinus, which has not been remarked by M. ALLAMAND, is (just as in the hartbeest,) about one line in diameter, and encompassed with a little tuft of black hair. Pores of this kind, or apertures in the skin, which excrete a substance of the nature of ear-wax, are not to be found, as far as I have been able to learn, in any species of the ox kind.

4. The noise made by the tame calf of a gnu, which I have frequently heard cry, did not in the least resemble the bleating of the common fawn.

5. I did not find that the flesh of this animal had any thing of the flavour of beef or of buffalo's flesh, but was rather like that of the other antilopes or gazels about the Cape; it had, however, a finer grain, and was more juicy than the flesh of the hartbeest, and consequently was much more delicate than beef.

6. I find from the dissection I made of a fawn of a gnu, that its viscera resemble those of the other antilopes which I had examined, more than the viscera of the ox, but that they bear no resemblance whatever to those of a horse: so that this circumstance is sufficient entirely to overthrow the conjecture, of those who imagine, that the gnu is produced by the copulation of a horse with a cow.

What makes it still less credible, that the gnu should be the offspring of such an intermixture as I have mentioned, is, that these animals are almost always seen in large herds,  
and,

1775.  
December.

and, as far as I can learn, are in Africa to be found only in *Camdebo* and *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*; from whence it is only a few years ago, that one of them was carried to the Cape, and from thence to Holland: consequently, the gnu then wandering in these parts was, probably, an old buck, which did not care to keep company any longer with the herd it belonged to, or had been accidentally separated from it.

As this that was seen here kept upon the open plains, and we could not steal upon it by creeping towards it from among the bushes, I endeavoured to overtake it on horse-back. And indeed, at first I got almost within gun-shot of the animal, when it shewed its vicious disposition in making various curvets and plunges, flinging out behind with one or both legs, and butting against the mole-hills with its horns; but immediately upon this, it fled with considerable velocity in a direct line over the plain as far as the eye could discern it: and I cannot help thinking, but that this was one that was become furious, as the other *gnus* I have chased since would frequently stop to look back at their pursuers, as soon as they had gained ground of them in any considerable degree. What contributed not a little to this gnu's having escaped from me was, that the ground was rocky, and that an ardent desire for dissecting this animal induced me to push my horse on too fast at first; so that in a very little time it was quite out of breath, and all over in a tremor.

A considerable number of eagles and birds of prey that feed upon carcases, were feasting on and fighting for the elk-antelope we had shot the day before, and had already consumed

1775.  
December.

consumed almost all the flesh we had left behind us. I likewise scared a jackal away from the carcase. I could not at this time pretend to chase it, as my horse was not recovered from the fatigue of pursuing the *gnu*. This day we likewise saw a numerous herd of *quaggas*, which not unfrequently made their appearance in these deserts. Scarcely a day passed without our seeing a great number of *hart-beests* between the two *Visch*-rivers, and *spring-boks* by the hundreds and thousands at a time.

It was now the 24th of December, a period which the Christians all over the world usually spend in mirth and festivity. My friend and I, though in the midst of a desert, and separated from the rest of mankind, were desirous of partaking of this religious jubilee; we therefore overhauled our stock of biscuit, and found that on occasion of this great holiday, we could afford to give out two to each man. As to the rest of our fare, we treated ourselves with an ostrich-egg, part of which was stewed in our porridge-pot, the remainder being boiled up with some coffee, a small basin full of which was distributed to every one of our company. The third dish consisted of a piece of elk's flesh. This day at noon the thermometer had been at 84, but towards the evening fell to 76.—At night our Hottentots fastened a piece of meat to a long stout strap in such a manner, that if the wolf should come and attempt to swallow the meat, he would be caught fast by the strap till they could lay hold of him and kill him; but the beast was not at that time in this part of the country, and consequently we could not discover how far this new invention of theirs was practicable.

On

1775.  
December.

On the 25th the thermometer rose to 100 degrees. We now repaired to a *sea-cow* hole, (*Zeeko-gat*) near *Vifch-rivier*, to look for the *bippopotamus*.

On the 26th the wind blew agreeably cool, and the thermometer at noon was not above 79. This day we overtook several farmers from *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, who were come into this neighbourhood for the purpose of hunting. I could not help smiling, though at the same time I was covered with confusion, at these good rustics viewing us so narrowly as they did from head to foot; while, on the other hand, I could not but allow their as well as our surprize, at this unexpected visit to be extremely natural. In fact, they found me with a beard which had not been touched since the end of the preceding month, without a stock, and with my waistcoat open at the breast, my hat flapped, my hair braided into a twist, my side-curls hanging down strait and fluttering in the air; a fine thin linen coat, with a white ground variegated with blood, dabs of gunpowder, and spots of dirt and greafe of all kinds; but at the same time decorated with fine gilt buttons, a third part of which were fallen off, and a great many of them dangled about loose and were ready to follow the others. As to the other part of my dress, my breeches, for the sake of coolness, were turned up at the knees, in the manner in which they are frequently worn by the boors of this country; and after the same guise, and for a similar reason, my stockings, which were woollen, were gartered below my knees, at the same time that they hung down loose about my ankles; while my feet were set off with Hottentot shoes, made to draw  
up

up with strings, of the same kind with those represented in Plate I. Vol. I. Fig. 4.

1775.  
December.

Mr. IMMELMAN, who, in fact, was a handsome young fellow, with large dark eye-brows and a fine head of hair, at this time wore a beard five weeks old, which was now beginning to curl in a very conspicuous manner. As to the rest of his appearance, he figured on horseback in a long night-gown, with a white night-cap, large wide boots, and, if I remember right, was just at that time without stockings, in order to keep his legs the cooler. It may be necessary here, perhaps, to make some excuse both for our beards and our dress. As to our beards, we had both of us in a merry mood, formed a resolution not to touch a hair of them either with razors or scissors, till we should either get into company again with the Christian lasses, or should have an opportunity of dissecting a hippopotamus. Added to this, we wished to try how a long beard would become our juvenile years. "It is a present made to us by nature, said we to each other, let us keep it by way of experiment. Our beards, perhaps, prevent our catching cold, and getting defluxions and the tooth-ache in cold nights; at least it is probable, that in this climate they defend the face from the scorching rays of the sun; and who can tell, what respect and consideration it may acquire us from the beardless tribes we are likely to meet with in the course of our expedition." This resolution of ours, which we pertinaciously adhered to, gave rise in the mean while to many ludicrous conversations; but I must confess, that we felt ourselves delivered from a very heavy burden, when we got rid of our beards. Again, as to our clothing, it was entirely adapted to the

1775.  
December.

warmth of the climate and our own convenience; neither was there any danger of its lessening us in the eyes of our own Hottentots, or of those we might expect to meet with in the desert. As for my woollen stockings, I wore them principally with a view to keep off the flies, as well as to preserve my legs from the bites of serpents, and from being torn by the branches of trees. Mr. IMMELMAN thought that boots were more convenient, and would answer this purpose better. Being an African by birth, he was not afraid of being sun-burned; on which account likewise, in order to keep his hair out of his eyes, he generally rode in his night-cap.

On the 27th at seven in the morning the thermometer stood at 60 degrees, the preceding night having appeared to us extremely cool. At noon the thermometer was at 95. At five in the afternoon it had fallen to 83, when there came a shower of rain with thunder and lightning. At nine in the evening the thermometer was at 79 degrees.

On the 29th I forded over Great *Visch-rivier*, and examined several sea-cows skulls that lay on the other side of it, and found them perfectly accord with the description and delineation given of these parts by M. DE BUFFON.

I now began to be incommoded by a slight pain and swelling in the fore part of the breast, just at the edge of the sternum, which gave me great uneasiness; but it went off in the space of a few days, and in all probability was only a fore-runner of the gout, the symptoms of which had already begun to appear in a slight pain and sensation of burning in the soles of my feet. This disorder, which fell particularly heavy on a botanist, and one who was travel-  
ling

ing through extensive deserts, I had probably brought upon myself, by having undergone too great fatigue. At least one of our horses was afflicted from this very cause with a kind of gout or tenderness in the feet, together with a swelling in the pastern-joints, as soon as it got home to the Cape. The day before we had eaten our last biscuit, our patience, in consequence of waiting so long to see the *bippopotamus*, was almost as near being exhausted as our bread; we, therefore, the next day came to a resolution to go again into a land inhabited by Christians.

On the 29th we were conducted by our Boshies-men from Great to Little *Visch-rivier*. This tract of country was thinly covered with thorn-trees (*mimosa nilotica*), which shaded the ground and kept it cool; so that being in some measure covered with grass, it exhibited an agreeable verdure, and at the same time harboured a considerable number of *springers*, *quaggas*, and *hartbeests*, of which latter we shot a young female. The muscles and fibres of this creature retained a convulsive motion and twitching, even for several minutes after the animal had been cut in pieces. I must confess, that I never, either before or since, have observed any thing of the kind in the hartbeest, or any other animal.

1775.  
December.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Residence at Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte.*1775.  
December

**T**HE first place where we took up our lodging was at an old elephant hunters, of the name of PRINTSLO, who was the first that had migrated here, and at the bottom a high mountain had pitched upon the finest situation for a farm in the whole district, and, I had almost said, in all Africa. The thermometer in the morning as well as in the evening was about 60 degrees.

On the 30th the thermometer within doors was at 60 degrees at seven in the morning, and in the evening at 67.

The 31st, which was New Year's Eve, and fell upon a Sunday, was celebrated with a psalm or two, and after that with a game at cards. They assured me, that the winter-months of July and August were colder at that place than at the Cape; so that the snow lay on the ground for a couple of days together, about two inches deep; but that their sheep and cattle, then as well as at other times, were kept out of doors in the open air, and in the day-time were driven abroad to go in quest of their own food.

January,

January, 1776. *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, where we were now arrived, is rather a flat tract of country, which takes in the upper part of *Kleine Visch-rivier*, and is separated from *Camdebo* by *Bruntjes-boogtens*, or the Bruntjes-hills, and with respect to the latter place (*Camdebo*) are situated *agter*, or behind them. The *Sneeuwbergen*, which lie to the north of *Camdebo*, are so called from the snow with which in the winter-time the highest of them are said to be covered, and even to remain so during part of the summer; so that they are, probably, of the same nature as the *Rogge-veld* and *Bokke-veld* mountains, and perhaps compose a part of the chain formed by them. The lower *Sneeuwbergen*, or Snow-mountains, are inhabited the year throughout; but on the higher range of hills the winters are severe enough: this circumstance, is said to make the colonists remove into the plains below in *Camdebo*. The inhabitants, indeed, of the more distant *Sneeuw*-mountains are sometimes obliged, according to report, entirely to relinquish their dwellings and habitations, on account of the savage plundering race of *Boshies-men*, of which I have made some mention above, in Vol. I. page 198; who from their hiding-places, shooting forth their poisoned arrows at the shepherd, kill him, and afterwards drive away the whole of his flock, which perhaps consists of several hundred sheep, and forms the chief, if not the whole, of the farmer's property. What they cannot drive away with them they kill and wound, as much as the time will allow them, while they are making their retreat. It is in vain to pursue them, they being very swift of foot, and taking refuge up in the steep mountains, which they are able to run up almost as nimbly

1776.  
January.



1776.  
January.

nimbly as baboons or monkies. From thence they roll down large stones, on any one that is imprudent enough to follow them. The approach of night gives them time to withdraw themselves entirely from those parts, by ways and places with which none but themselves are acquainted. These banditti collect together again in bodies to the amount of some hundreds, from their hiding-places and the clefts in the mountains, in order to commit fresh depredations and robberies. One of the colonists, who had been obliged to fly from these mountains, was at this time passing to *Agter Bruntjes-boogte* with his family, servants, and cattle, in order to look out for a new habitation. He informed us, that the *Boshies-men* grew bolder every day, and seemed to increase in numbers, since people had with greater earnestness set about extirpating them. It was this, doubtless, which has occasioned them to collect together into large bodies, in order to withstand the encroachments of the colonists, who had already taken from them their best dwelling and hunting-places. An instance was related of the *Boshies-men* having besieged a peasant with his wife and children in their cottage, till at length he drove them off by repeatedly firing among them. They had lately carried off from a farmer the greater part of his cattle. Not long before this, however, they had suffered a considerable defeat in the following manner. Several farmers, who perceived that they were not able to get at the *Boshies-men* by the usual methods, shot a sea-cow, and took only the prime part of it for themselves, leaving the rest by way of bait; they themselves, in the mean while, lying in ambush. The *Boshies-men* with their wives and children now came down

1776.  
January.

down from their hiding-places, with an intention to feast sumptuously on the sea-cow that had been shot; but the farmers, who came back again very unexpectedly, turned the feast into a scene of blood and slaughter.—Pregnant women, and children in their tenderest years, were not at this time, neither indeed are they ever, exempt from the effects of the hatred and spirit of vengeance constantly harboured by the colonists with respect to the Boshies-man nation; excepting such, indeed, as are marked out to be carried away into bondage. Does a colonist at any time get sight of a Boshies-man, he takes fire immediately, and spirits up his horse and dogs, in order to hunt him with more ardour and fury than he would a wolf or any other wild beast. On an open plain, a few colonists on horseback are always sure to get the better of the greatest number of Boshies-men that can be brought together, as the former always keep at the distance of about a hundred or a hundred and fifty paces, (just as they find it convenient) and charging their heavy fire-arms with a very large kind of shot, jump off their horses, and rest their pieces in their usual manner on their ram-rods, in order that they may shoot with the greater certainty; so that the balls discharged by them will sometimes, as I have been assured, go through the bodies of six, seven, or eight of the enemy at a time, especially as these latter know no better than to keep close together in a body. It is true, that, on the other hand, the Boshies-men can shoot their arrows to the distance of two hundred paces, but with a very uncertain aim, as the arrow must necessarily first make a curve in the air; and should it even at that distance chance to hit any of the farmers,

1776.  
January.



mers, it is not able to go through his hat, or his ordinary linen or coarse woollen coat.

In the district of *Sneeuwberg* the *land-droft* has appointed one of the farmers, with the title of *veld-corporal*, to command in these wars, and as occasion may require, to order out the country people alternately in separate parties, for the purpose of defending the country against its original inhabitants. Government, indeed, has no other part in the cruelties exercised by its subjects, than that of taking no cognizance of them; but in this point it has been certainly too remiss, in leaving a whole nation to the mercy of every individual peasant, or in fact, of every one that chuses to invade their land; as of such people one might naturally expect, that interested views, and an unbridled spirit of revenge, should prevail over the dictates of prudence and humanity. I am far from accusing all the colonists of having a hand in these and other cruelties, which are too frequently committed in this quarter of the globe. While some of them plumed themselves upon them, there were many who, on the contrary, held them in abomination, and feared lest the vengeance of heaven should, for all these crimes, fall upon their land and their posterity.

It is true, that no endeavours have as yet been made to polish the *Bosbies-man* natives, and make them better men, and more useful to the colonists; but if we may form any judgment from the disposition of those who have been hired into the colonists service, or have been made slaves of, and have not run away, this seems not impossible to be effected. Yet, perhaps, the sentiments that are commonly entertained to their disadvantage, as well as the cruelties which

1776.  
January.

which have been hitherto practised upon them, cannot but lay many impediments in the way of an attempt of this nature. If what I have been assured by many be true, the Hottentots, who originally resided at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, lived peaceably with the Christians who first migrated thither. They used likewise to perform the kindest offices for the latter, and would frequently go unasked in search of a stray lamb, or the like, belonging to the Christians, and take it home to them; but at length they had withdrawn themselves, and now live concealed in holes and corners up and down this part of the country like other Boshies-men. Yet, being fewer in number, they are not altogether so bold and daring. Their complexions being rather of a yellow cast, they are considered as of a different nation, and have consequently been called *Cbinese-* or *Snese-*Hottentots. The chief abode of these fugitives is on each side of the two *Visch-riviers*. Many of them that I saw had been good serviceable slaves. While we, like them, were strolling up and down between the two *Visch* rivers, we came occasionally to the very spots, where the traces of their extinguished fires were plainly to be seen, with other marks of their having been encamped there: and it would not, in my opinion, have been difficult for them to have harrassed us and done us much mischief; but whether it was their stupidity, the mildness of their dispositions, or their fears that withheld them I know not, but they certainly did not do it. If, indeed, the mildness of their dispositions alone influenced them in this matter, their conduct is by no means justifiable; for viewing it in this light, one may justly say, that they commit a crime against themselves,

1776.  
January.

felves, in leaving the colonists at peace, to pursue them and make slaves of them at their own leisure.

Another and more considerable part of this yellow-skinned nation, is dispersed over a tract of country eleven days journey in breadth, and situated more to the north than to the north-east of the *Visch-riviers*, near a river called *Zomo*, where some of them are said to be occupied in the grazing and rearing of cattle. Small parties of Christians have, indeed, travelled through this country, and shot elephants there unmolested; yet they have thought it necessary for their greater security, to shut themselves up at night in their waggons, as in a castle.

The more considerable rivers which run through the country of the *Snefe-Hottentots*, are said to be only the following. *t'Kamsi-t'kay*, *t'Nu-t'kay*, *Little Zomo*, *Great Zomo*, at which latter another country belonging to a different nation commences. These rivers are reported to flow from north to south and south-east, down towards the sea, whether they probably run all together through the country called *Caffer-land*. From *t'Kau-t'kay*, or the great fish river, to *t'Kamsi-t'kay*, or the white river, they reckon seven days journey; every day's journey being reckoned at above forty-five miles, or eight hours brisk driving of oxen without stopping. From thence to *t'Nu-t'kay*, or the black river, it is reckoned one day's journey. From hence to *Little Zomo*, or the little *Watery-eyed* river, it is two days journey; and from this to *Great Zomo*, or the great *Watery-eye*, it is half a day. In this river, which is one of the largest, there is said to be a great number of green stones, some of which the person who gave me this information, carried with

1776.  
January.

with him to the Cape, and sold them to a dealer there, who sold them again, and made presents of them to travellers. They were, in all probability, of very little value.

On the other side of *Zomo* dwells another nation, who, by the *Snese-Hottentots*, are called *Tambukis*, and are said by them to resemble themselves in complexion and dress, but to be a powerful and warlike people. Adjoining to this nation, towards the north, there is, according to them, a still more warlike and intrepid people, whom they call *Mambukis*. Such colonists as have visited *Zomo*-river, have observed, about two days journey to the northward of it, a mountain that threw out a great quantity of smoke. The *Snese-Hottentots* informed me, that the *Tambukis* had furnaces there for the purpose of smelting a species of metal, which they forge and make into ornaments of various kinds, hiring the *Snese-Hottentots* to carry in the wood which they use in these smeltings. I have frequently seen the *Snese-Hottentots* at *Bruntjes-boogte* with ear-rings of this metal, and of the form exhibited in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 8 and 9. In external appearance they resemble pistole gold; but from the assay made on one of these rings by M. Von ENGSTROEM, counsellor of the mines, they appear to be merely a mixture of copper and silver.

That singular animal, the *unicorn*, which is usually represented like a horse with a horn in its forehead, has been found delineated by the *Snese-Hottentots* on the plain surface of a rock somewhere in that country, though in as an uncouth and artless a style, as might naturally be expected from so rude and unpolished a people. JACOB KOK, that great traveller and attentive observer of nature, whom

1776.  
January.

I have had occasion to mention before at page 351, Vol. I. is my only informer on this subject. The Snese-Hottentots told him, that by this sketch they meant to represent an animal, which, in point of resemblance, came nearest to the horses on which he and his train rode, but which at the same time had a horn in its forehead. To this they added, that these creatures were rare, extremely swift of foot, furious and dangerous; so that, when they went out after them they did not dare to attack them at close quarters, nor appear before them on the open plains, but were obliged to clamber up some high cliff or rock, and there make a clattering noise; by which means they knew that the beast, being of a curious disposition, would be enticed towards the spot, when they might, without danger, destroy it by means of their poisoned arrows. It should seem, that a rude and barbarous people like the Chinese-Hottentots, could not easily invent, and, by the mere force of imagination, represent to themselves such beings, and at the same time so circumstantially relate the manner in which they hunted them. Still less credible is it, that these savages should have been able to preserve any remembrance of the records and traditions of former times concerning this animal. Neither is it any wonder, that a sketch of the unicorn should be seen here only at one place. For, generally speaking, a man sees little or nothing in passing through this country, which is only resorted to for the purpose of hunting elephants. Now I have happened to touch upon the subject of the elephant, it is worth while to remark, that even this, the largest of all animals on the face of the globe, which is so common and so much sought after

1776.  
January.

after in Africa, and so frequently tamed, and at the same time so much used, and consequently so well known in Asia, has been hitherto, as it were, unknown, and the subject of much dispute with respect to an essential point, I mean the manner of its copulation, as I have related above at page 326, Vol. I. It is therefore not so much to be wondered at, that we should know nothing of an animal less in bulk, and much less common. And though I should object to the testimony given me by my informer, as well as to that of the Chinese-Hottentots, in regard to the unicorn, yet the existence of it should not on that account be looked upon as a fable, notwithstanding it is not known to these more modern times.

It is but a few years since the *camelopardalis*, the tallest of all quadrupeds, when measured at the fore part, has been made fresh mention of by naturalists; this too has been the case with the *gnu*. A representation of this remarkable animal, the *camelopardalis*, seems likewise to have been given us by the ancients; but who, till these our times, ever considered it in any other light than that of a fiction, a monster, or, at least, a monstrous medley, existing only in the imagination? When we consider, moreover, that the *bippopotamus*, which in all probability is a larger animal, though somewhat lower than the elephant, has been hitherto very little known; as likewise that, till the present moment, we have been almost utter strangers even to the *rhinoceros bicornis*, may we not expect that there will be a time, when the unicorn and all other beasts and insects, animated by the Creator of all things, but unknown to us at present, will be brought out of their holes and hiding-places into the light? The following extract of  
a let-

1776.  
January.

a letter from M. PALLAS, dated the 14th of December, 1778, which, on account of the good sense and instruction with which it is replete, I shall take the liberty of inserting in this place, will serve to confirm us in the idea, that the unicorn is a real, and not an imaginary animal.

“ Quod monocerotem in interioribus Africæ partibus etiamnum latere suspicionem moves, id quidem mihi haud inexpectatum; certoque jamdudum persuasus sum, non ex nihilo apud veteres illam fuisse famam; sed vel casu unicornes antilopas, de quibus in XII. Fasciculo Spicilegiorum dixi, ansam dedisse, vel peculiarem fortè speciem unicornem, nobis hucusque ignotam, antiquitus innotuisse, quando interiora Africæ itineratoribus Europæis erant frequentiora. Si non incidisti forsan in locum relationis Ludovici Barthema, ubi Monocerotes duos Meccæ ad templum, in theriotrophæo vivos, describit; vide illam, quæso, in Vol. I. collection. Ramusii, p. 151. Nescio quid hominem excitare potuisset ad fingenda, quæ ibi retulit, quæque non ita malè cohærent.

I have not as yet been able to procure a sight of the *Collections Ramusii* referred to by M. PALLAS\*.—With respect

\* The passage in VARTHEMA here referred to is as follows:

“ Da un'altra banda del dicto tempio è una murata, nella quale sta dentro dui unicorni vivi & li se mostrano per cosa grandissima come è certo. Li quali diro come sono facti. El maggior facto como un polledro di trenta mesi & ha uno corno nella fronte, el quale corno se circa tre braccia di longheza. L'altro unicornio se come serio un polledro de uno anno, & ha un corno longo circa quatro palmi. El colore del dicto animale se come un cavallo faginato scuro: & ha la testa come un cervo & ha el collo non molto longo con elschuna crina rara & curta che pendeno ad una banda: & ha la gamba sottile & asciuta come un capriolo: el pede suo è un poco fesso davanti & longia è caprina: & ha certi peli dalla banda di dietro veramenti questa mostra de essere un ferocissima & deserto animale. Et questi dui animali furono presentati allo Soldano della Mecha, per la pui bella cosa ch' hoggi se trovi al modi & per piu ricco thesoro liquali furono mandati da uno Re de Ethiopia:

spect to other particulars, I have been informed by the colonists at *Agter Bruntjes Hoogte*, that the tract of country lying between them and *Zomo*, or the *Tambukis*, consisted in a great measure of very extensive and barren plains; that the farther they went to the north, the less they knew of the vegetables produced by it; that there grew in these parts a kind of blood-tree, &c. that if one travelled from the upper part of *Visch-rivier* more to the south-east, or the *Caffre* side of the country, one would come to a river called *Konap*, which was supposed to run into *Visch-rivier*; but two days journey farther on, going from *Konap*-river towards the north-east, there was a river, called *Kajsi-kamma*, which derived its source from a mountain known to the

1776.  
January.

Ethiopia: zoe da un Re Moro, el quale li fece questo presente per fare parentato con el dicto Soldano de la Mecha."

"On the other side of the temple there is a court-yard encompassed with high walls, where we saw two unicorns, which were shewn as great rarities, and indeed are fit subjects for admiration. The form of them is as follows. The larger one resembles a foal of two years and a half old, and has a horn in its forehead about three cubits in length. The other unicorn was less, being nearly as big as a foal of a year old, and had a horn about four palms long. The colour of this animal is that of a dark dun horse; its head is like that of a stag, its neck of a moderate length, furnished with some thinly scattered short hairs that hang down on one side: its legs are long and slender like those of a roe; the feet are somewhat cloven in the fore part, and the hoofs are like those of a goat. It has on the back part of its legs a great quantity of hair, a circumstance which gives this animal a fierce appearance; though, in fact, the beast is tame and gentle in its nature. Both the animals were presented to the Sultan of Mecca as very great rarities, and which are to be found in very few parts of the globe, by an Ethiopian King, who sought for the Sultan's friendship.

The preceding passage is extracted from the original, in the library of the President of the Royal Society. The book itself, the title of which is as follows, *Itinerario de Ludovico de Varthema, Bolognese, ne lo Egypto, ne lo Suria, ne la Arabia, &c. (Venezia, 1517, 8vo.)* is extremely scarce, and does not appear to have been seen either by M. PALLAS, Dr. SPARRMAN, or his German commentator Mr. FORSTER. The translation of this passage is made from RAMUSIO, who has modernized this author, or rather re-translated him from a Latin version, which is itself a translation only from the Spanish; so that the Italian original must have been lost for some time.

colonists

1776.  
January.

colonists by the name of the *Bambus-berg*, or Bamboo-mountain, from the circumstance of a sort of reeds or bamboos growing upon it, which were very much prized by them for the purpose of making handles for their long whips.

*Groote-rivier*, or *Great river*, is said to be the largest river in Africa, and to be no otherwise known than from the accounts of the Hottentots. It is reported to contain a great number of sea-cows or river-horses, which were very bold and daring; so that it cannot, without danger, be navigated for the purpose of farther exploring the country. It is supposed to lie directly to the northward, at the distance of eight or ten days journey from the *Sneeuw-bergen*. It was said to rise in the east, and run strait on towards the north. It is probable that this river soon after turns off to the west and the south, and is the same *Groote-rivier* which I have inserted in my map, on the authority of M. HENRY HOP'S *Journal of an Expedition made to the District of Anamaquas*, published in a compilation called *Nouvelle Description du Cap de bonne Esperance*, which I quoted above. This river, however, must not be confounded with another of the same name, which empties itself at the eastern shore of Africa and the Caffre coast.

The country of the Caffres lies to the east of *Great Visch-rivier*, next the coast. Its inhabitants, the Caffres, have no notion of the breeding of sheep, employing themselves only in rearing horned cattle, and, like the *Gonaquas* Hottentots, wearing cow-hides, which are well rubbed and dressed with grease, till they become soft and pliable. Their houses, or huts, are said to be small and square, composed

of rods, and covered with clay and cow-dung, which gives them the appearance of small stone houses.

1776.  
January.



The weapons of the Caffres are merely shields made of sole-leather, and haffagais, or that kind of javelin consisting of a slender and light wooden shaft, headed with a broad and rather heavy iron plate, which I have delineated in Plate II. Vol. I. fig. 1 and 2, and have mentioned at page 9 of this volume, as being made use of by the Gonaquas Hottentots.

The nation is governed by many different chiefs, who probably have all the property of their subjects vested in themselves, and at the same time have an absolute unlimited authority over them. As far as I could understand, their state and power are hereditary. It is said that they are frequently at war with each other, and that they always kill the prisoners they have taken. But if a chief should chance to fall into the enemy's hands, he is not put to death, but is sent back again with admonitions to behave himself more peaceably for the future. The occasion of their wars is generally the same as in other parts of the globe, viz. either a want of the common sentiments of humanity in one of the contending powers, or their arrogant and rapacious disposition, or else some bone of contention which they cannot on either side persuade themselves to give up, without shedding their own blood and that of their fellow-creatures. It is even said, that a stolen or stray calf, or one grazing upon territories of a neighbouring country, and other matters equally trifling, will sometimes be sufficient to set two or more nations together by the ears. Neither of the parties, however, carries their

VOL. II. X revenge

1776.  
January.

revenge so far as to extirpate the other, but is satisfied when the adversary yields the day and sues for peace.

The Dutch colonists have, by means of the following incident, of which I do not remember exactly the year, inspired the Caffre nation with no small degree of terror. A man of the name of HEUPPENAER, made an expedition, at the head of a small party of farmers, into the Caffre country, in order to shoot elephants. The Caffres, who took a fancy to the iron-work of their waggons, and some other articles they had with them, came in a body, consisting of several hundred men, and threw on a sudden such a number of darts among the colonists, that the major part of them were killed; a dart likewise pierced through the tilt of a waggon and killed HEUPPENAER, who was sitting in it. The blame of this was in a great measure thrown upon HEUPPENAER, who was too high-spirited to shew any fear, and, agreeably to the advice of his companions, take to his weapons in time. One of them, who was said still to be living in the colony, had escaped, though half drowned, by hiding himself for the space of twenty-four hours under a large water-fall. Two others found an opportunity of riding away, and afterwards harrassing the Caffres a long time on the plain, by jumping, whenever they came near a party of these savages, off their horses at intervals, in order to take a better aim, by which means they killed several at one shot. This fracas, and the manner in which it was revenged, have taught the Caffres ever since, to lay a greater restraint on their desires for the iron-work of the colonists waggons.

In

1776.  
January.

In *Lange-kloof* I met with a farmer who was just come back alone from this country, and had brought with him several elephants teeth. In return for some tobacco with which he had presented a Caffre prince, this latter had ordered his subjects to shew him the places where the elephants were to be found.

In my map I have called a tract of country situated towards the mouth of *Groote Visch-rivier*, by the name of *King Ruyter's Craal*, in commemoration of a Hottentot king, or, as he was styled by the colonists, a Hottentot captain, called RUYTER. I have met with several Christians who had paid a visit to this remarkable man, and related to me his life and adventures, which in brief are as follows. While he was in service at a farmer's at *Rogge-veld*, he happened to have a quarrel with another Hottentot his companion, and murdered him; and as he was apprehensive of being, agreeably to the laws of the colony, hanged for this action, he ran away. After a variety of adventures, he arrived at length in that part of the country which lies near *Boshies-man's-rivier*, where by his intrepidity, he raised himself to be the chief of a party of Boshies-men, or Hottentot rangers. At the head of these he subdued several other tribes, and afterwards had the art to make them take arms against the Caffres, by exciting in them a mistrust of each other; and at the same time inspiring them with a high opinion of himself, as being of so great importance to them in the capacity of their chief or leader, that they could not possibly do without him; especially as he supplied them with plunder, and taught them a method

1776.  
January.

of rearing their cattle, better in both cases than ever they had been accustomed to.

While by such conduct he rendered himself highly formidable to the Caffres, he took care, by inflicting the punishment of death on his subjects for the least fault, or even on the least suspicion of a fault, to exact (and for a long time to enjoy) the most servile submission and implicit obedience from the simple uncultivated mortals he had collected together in order to tyrannize over. He used frequently with his own hand to put to death one or more of these slavish vassals, and would immediately throw his javelin through the body of any of his attendants, that hesitated at his nod to dispatch the man whom he had marked out as the victim of his revengeful and cruel disposition.

Exclusively of the dictates of a false and ill-judged policy, perhaps the natural turn of the tyrant's mind induced him to be guilty of these cruelties; but when the Christians reproached him with the barbarity and blood-thirstiness of his disposition, he replied, "It was in a lucky hour that I conveyed myself out of the reach of your authority. You would have hanged me for having killed my antagonist as if I had committed a crime, when at the same time, to kill an enemy is reckoned a laudable and manly action." To the colonists he always behaved as a true and faithful ally; and in return for the tobacco and other articles they presented him with, used to help them to make slaves of such straggling Boshies-men as did not live under his jurisdiction. By keeping the Caffres at a proper distance, he not only served his own turn, but was likewise extremely useful

1776.  
January.

ful to the colonists. But however cautious he was to maintain peace with his more powerful neighbours the Christians, yet it is said, that when he was in the meridian of life, and at the zenith of his power, he received them with an uncommon degree of pride and arrogance; which, as my informer expressed himself, they could not easily digest from a vagabond *sheep-skin* prince. He succeeded, however, in keeping up his importance with them as well as with his own people. At present, old and infirm, and barely director of a more inconsiderable and freer society, consisting of about two hundred people, he is wont to receive his old Christian acquaintance in the most friendly manner, and, with tears in his eyes, to ask for tobacco, no longer by way of tribute, but as a present, which he is willing to receive from their bounty.

The despotic and tyrannical conduct by which this chief made himself so famous, and for some time so powerful and so much feared, is probably the occasion of his being reduced to the low state in which he is at present; and it is imagined, will bring him to a still more abject and lower condition. This great man may, perhaps, at last come to the miserable situation of the lion in the fable. Another cause of his present degradation is as follows. His subjects, weary of the ambition and severe discipline of their chief, took the opportunity of deserting him, at the time when he was gallantly marching at the head of them against the Caffres. Being no longer so swift of foot as he was in his youth, he was not able to make his escape, and was consequently taken prisoner; but being recognized as a chief, his life, according to the custom I have before mentioned,

1776.  
January.

tioned, as being established among the Caffres, was spared, and he was sent back to his people; yet not without menaces of having his eyes put out, if ever he should rise against them in arms in future. This misfortune, and the salutary lesson given him by his enemies, were not efficacious, however, as soon as he had again collected together a number of his people, to divert his hostile intentions against the Caffres. It was said, that he had lately endeavoured to spirit up another petty Boshies-man chief against them, and had received from him promises of assistance, as soon as he could get iron to head his arrows with, and make the other necessary preparations. They were apprehensive, and not without reason, that the old tyrant in this intended expedition of his would meet with that death, which, tired of himself and his adverse fortune, he seemed to be in search of. He had, according to a custom prevalent among the Hottentots, appointed the youngest of his three sons to be heir to his possessions and throne. Neither of the three, however, was supposed to inherit the father's talents and abilities in a sufficient degree, to be able to establish himself on the throne.

The respective methods of fighting of the Caffres and Hottentots are very different. The Caffres, as we have mentioned above, make use of darts, which they cannot employ with any effect at a greater distance than twenty or thirty paces. Of these darts they do not carry with them into the field more than three or four; so that they are soon disarmed, in case their antagonists are bold and nimble enough to pick up these weapons as soon as the Caffres have thrown them out of their hands. The Caffres, moreover,

1776.  
January.



moreover, use a shield made of shoe-sole leather, and large enough to cover the whole of their bodies completely, on their shrinking themselves up into a rather smaller compass. I have seen a bastard Caffre go through his exercise with these weapons; from whence I conclude, that when they are in actual engagement, they shift their bodies continually from one side to the other, so that they cannot easily be hit, taking care all this time to keep their *bassagais* or darts in readiness, to throw at the unguarded part of their antagonists. The Boshies-men, on the other hand, who are without any shields, are more than a match for the Caffres, as long as they can keep them at a good distance from them by means of their bows and poisoned arrows, which, though they do not immediately make so painful a wound, as the *bassagais* of the Caffres, are yet more dangerous in the end.

It was in consequence of this circumstance, that RUYTER'S Boshies-men beat the Caffres for so long a time. It has therefore been a matter of wonder, that the Caffres have not learned the use of the bow and arrow, in like manner as their enemies the Boshies-men. This manner of fighting does not seem to require great courage, nor indeed does it appear calculated to give either nation a disposition to it.

If I may be allowed to judge from two instances, the slaves of the Christians are of a much more warlike turn. These, consequently, when they elope from their masters' service, are sure to be well received and protected by the Caffres. At least, a Caffre prince, notwithstanding that he had a handsome consideration offered him, had just before our arrival in these parts, refused to deliver up two slaves belonging

1776.  
January.

belonging to the Christians; alledging, by way of giving a reason for his refusal, that they were his best warriors.

Before I proceed, agreeably to the order of my journal, to speak of *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, where I lived for some time, I must just mention the following particulars relative to a province immediately bordering upon it.

*Camdebo* is an arid, flat, *Carrow-like* tract of country, inhabited by Christians, who are chiefly employed in rearing cattle. This district is said to extend as far as the south side of the *Sneeuw* mountains. From the information and accounts that were given me, I have laid down in my map two different roads, by which people may go to the Cape through *Camdebo*, both from *Agter Bruntjes-boogte* and from the *Sneeuwbergen*. The north road is said to go to *Anthou-veld*, *Kau-veld*, and *Bokke-veld*. The southern way goes downwards to *Oliphant's-rivier*, and so along that to the high road, by which I went myself, and which I have laid down in my map. You may likewise turn out of this southern road before, and go by *Platte-kloof*, *Hex-rivier*, and so on to the Cape. The inhabitants of *Camdebo* and *Sneeuwberg* have likewise, it is said, found out a by-road, though rough and intricate, down by the side of *Zondags-rivier* to *Zwartkops-rivier*, in order to provide themselves with salt at the salt-pits described above.

These two roads through *Camdebo*, &c. are, it is true, the nearest from *Bruntjes-boogte* to the *Cape*; and in fact, the only road that people take. But the tracts of country through which they are carried, are said to be but little inhabited, very arid, and deficient in respect to pasturage, and still more so in the article of water; particularly that

year,

1776.  
January.

year, which was supposed to be the driest in the memory of man, so that some particular watering-places were entirely dried up. I was told of a traveller, the greater part of whose oxen had, on occasion of this circumstance, fainted and died upon the road. Consequently, our beasts, which were too few in number to be able to relieve each other much, by this time wearied out, and not used to put up with the dry bushes of the Carrow country, were the more likely to perish, had we not, on the score of these considerations, suffered ourselves to be entirely dissuaded from travelling by these roads. I was likewise obliged to give up all thoughts of visiting *Sneeuwberg* and *Camdebo*, on account of the disorder among the horses, which was said at this time to be very rife, and had already reached almost as far as to *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*. In this place, moreover, there were many birds, insects, and animals which I had not seen in other parts, and which gave me sufficient employment. Besides, my present host, who wished to keep me with him for the sake of two people who were sick in his house, was extremely civil to me, and assisted me greatly in my researches; and, together with one of his sons and his son-in-law, accompanied me afterwards on a hunting-party down *Visch-rivier*, which lasted for a fortnight, and of which I shall give an account hereafter.

Having so many subjects to employ myself upon, I was almost tempted to remain here during the winter, in order to make a trip the following spring to the *Tambuki mines*, and at the same to go in quest of the unicorn. In fact, both Mr. IMMELMAN and myself endeavoured to persuade

1776.  
January.

several farmers to equip themselves for this undertaking. This scheme they had no great objection to, but could not give me a positive answer on the subject; and indeed, after a more mature consideration of the matter I found, that I had neither money nor gunpowder sufficient for the purpose, not to mention many other good reasons which prevented me from putting it into execution. I was therefore obliged, though sore against my will, to give up all thoughts of this excursion; though afterwards I was not very sorry at having met with the disappointment, being pretty well convinced, that another year's fatigue would not have contributed much more to my future happiness.

In the mean while, after an absence of five years spent in travels and voyages to various parts of the globe, I imagine it will scarcely be necessary to make any excuse for turning my thoughts likewise towards home. Happy if my humble endeavours should excite other naturalists to pursue the same path with greater success, and make us acquainted with the remaining curious and remarkable objects, which are doubtless still to be found in the southern parts of Africa.

Consequently, *Agter Bruntjes-boogte* is the northernmost part that I visited of the whole colony; and, in my opinion, it is likewise the most pleasant. There was still remaining on the ground, a more meadow-like verdure than is usually seen in this country; a verdure that owed its existence to the shelter that was afforded to the soil by the thorny branches of the *mimosa nilotica*, and was still further enlivened by the numerous yellow blossoms of that plant. The great quantity of beautiful vernal lilies, together with a peculiar

peculiar *parasitic* plant of a blood-red hue, (described by me in the Swedish Transact. for 1776, page 307) which were now springing out of their beds covered with a more verdant and luxuriant herbage than the other parts of this country, must doubtless in the season for their blooming, add still more to the splendour of this delightful scene. This, however, was not a little augmented by a purling stream, viz. Little *Visch-rivier*, which winds through this spot in sportive meanders. On its banks, besides corn-fields, were seen scattered up and down orchards and kitchen-gardens recently laid out, and some of them cut through with drains. Plantations, which though as yet inconsiderable, seemed, however, to promise every thing to time and industry. The houses, far from intimidating the traveller by their splendid appearance, with the constrained pomp of antichambers and drawing-rooms, were rather in the style of plain and simple cottages; but, on the other hand, were environed with the animated embellishments of sheep and cattle, and inhabited by people in easy circumstances; who, not with interested views, but with open arms received me and my companion, just arrived from the dreary and inhospitable desert, and charmed us with their kind and friendly behaviour.

The superior degree of fertility, and the more delightful verdure which I found here, ought, perhaps, to be ascribed to a ridge of mountains on the east side of Little *Visch-rivier*, which was intersected by beautiful green vales interspersed with woods. These mountains, by collecting the clouds together, caused them to fall in refreshing showers of rain on the banks of the river that ran at their feet: and

1776.  
January.

the superior degree of fertility occasioned by these circumstances, invited not only the antilopes and other animals of the chase to this side of the country, but likewise induced various kinds of beautiful birds to resort to it, and build their nests in the trees that grew on the banks of the river.

What contributes not a little to this fertility is, that the land is fresh, that is to say, not yet worn out by being too frequently and too closely grazed off by the numerous flocks and herds of the Christians, vide Vol. p. 251, 252.

All the colonists who follow the grazing business, and particularly those at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, lead an easy and pleasant life. One of these boors usually puts to his plough eight or ten of his fat, or rather pampered oxen; and it is hardly to be conceived, with what little trouble he gets into order a field of a moderate size; and in consequence of his feeding so great a number of cattle, how easily he can render it in the highest degree fertile. So that, always sure of a rich harvest from a soil not yet worn out, and ever grateful to the culture bestowed upon it, he may be almost said merely to amuse himself with the cultivation of it, for the bread he wants for himself and his family; while many other husbandmen must sweat and toil themselves almost to death, both for what they use themselves, and for that which is consumed by others, who frequently live in ease and indolence. By his extensive pastures, and by throwing a sufficient quantity of land into tillage, he rears a considerable number of horses, which frequently are used only a few days in a year, for the purpose of treading out and threshing his corn. With pleasure, but without the least trouble to himself, he sees the herds and flocks, which constitute his riches,

1776.  
January.

riches, daily and considerably increasing. These are driven to pasture and home again by a few Hottentots or slaves, who likewise make the butter; so that it is almost only with the milking, that the farmer, together with his wife and children, concern themselves at all. To do this business, however, he has no occasion to rise before seven or eight o'clock in the morning; and notwithstanding his having enjoyed his bed so long in the morning, he can afford, without neglecting any thing of consequence, to allow himself an afternoon's nap, which the heat of the climate renders more agreeable than it is in our northern regions.

That they might not put their arms and bodies out of the easy and commodious posture in which they had laid them on the couch, they have been known to receive travellers lying quite still and motionless, excepting that they have very civilly pointed out the road, by moving their foot to the right or left. Professor THUNBERG, who has had greater opportunities than I had of exploring the warmer *Carrow* districts, (vide Vol. I. page 246) where the inhabitants were still more indolent, has given me an account much to the same purpose.

The leaning of their arms on the table at meal times, is a custom very common with the colonists, and considered by them as a very laudable one, and in this particularly I followed my host's example; but I could not sufficiently admire the inventive spirit of idleness, exhibited in the voluptuous posture in which they universally indulge themselves when they smoke their pipes. Sitting on a bench or a chair without elbows, with their backs moderately bent, they lay their left leg over their right knee, and upon  
the

1776.  
January.

the left knee again thus raised, they rest their left elbow, while with the hand on the same side they support their chin, or one of their cheeks, at the same time holding their pipes in their mouths. Their right hand is then at liberty to grasp the small of their left leg with, or else to convey now and then to their mouth a cooling draught of tea. Let the reader represent to himself several people sitting together in this posture, and he will readily conceive what an elegant figure they would make in a group. I never saw any of the fair sex, however, in a posture of this kind. Among a set of beings so entirely devoted to their ease, one might naturally expect to meet with a variety of the most commodious easy chairs and sofas; but the truth is, that they find it much more commodious to avoid the trouble of inventing and making them.

I remarked as a very singular circumstance, that a wealthy farmer at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, who had plenty of timber to sell, had nevertheless only a ricketty elbow-chair in his house, and a few scanty stools of the most simple construction, made of a single board, with four rough-hewn ill-shapen legs. What, however, was still more singular was, that notwithstanding that one of these stools had lost a leg, yet it was frequently made use of to the endangering of the person's limbs who sat upon it, without either the master of the house or any of his three sons, who were otherwise all alert enough at the chase, having ever once thought of mending it. Nor did the inhabitants of this place exhibit much less simplicity and moderation, or to speak more properly, slovenliness and penury in their dress than in their furniture; neither of which, therefore, were

in

in any wise correspondent to the large flocks and herds possessed by these graziers, and the plentiful tables they could afford to keep in consequence of these possessions. The distance at which they are from the Cape, may, indeed, be some excuse for their having no other earthenware or china in their houses, but what was cracked or broken; but this, methinks, should not prevent them from being in possession of more than one or two old pewter pots, and some few plates of the same metal; so that two people are frequently obliged to eat out of one dish, using it besides for every different article of food that comes upon table.

1776.  
January.



Each guest must bring his knife with him, and they frequently make use of their fingers instead of forks. The most wealthy farmer here is considered as being well dressed in a jacket of home-made cloth, or something of the kind made of any other coarse cloth, breeches of undressed leather, woollen stockings, a striped waistcoat, a cotton handkerchief about his neck, a coarse callico shirt, Hottentot field-shoes, or else leathern shoes, with brass buckles, and a coarse hat. Indeed it is not in dress, but in the number and thriving condition of their cattle, and chiefly in the stoutness of their draught-oxen, that these peasants vie with each other. It is likewise by activity and manly actions, and by other qualities, that render a man fit for the married state, and the rearing of a family, that the youth chiefly obtain the esteem of the fair sex; none of whom likewise were ever known, for the sake of vying with each other in point of dress, to have endangered either their husband's property or their own virtue. A plain close cap, and a coarse cotton gown, virtue and good housewifery, are look-

1776.  
January.

ed upon by the fair sex as sufficient ornaments for their persons; a flirting disposition, coquetry and paint, would have very little effect in making conquests of young men, brought up in so hardy a manner, and who have had so homely and artless an education, as the youth in this place. In short, one may here, if any where in the world, lead an innocent, virtuous, and happy life.

When in company with these plain artless husbandmen, I used frequently to start such questions and subjects of conversation, as tended to give them a proper sense of the happiness of their situation, and make them set a higher value upon it, than they perhaps had done before. Indeed, I thought I could not more properly or more agreeably employ the little Dutch I had learned, than in persuading the good people among whom I sojourned, to be content with their lot, and consequently to be happy. One day, when I was urging this point, I received the following pertinent, but kind reply, from a discreet sensible woman, who was daughter to an inferior magistrate at *Zwelandam*, and was married to a yeoman in this place.

“ My good friend, said she, you talk like a prudent sensible man; I am quite of your opinion, and wish you every happiness that can attend you: why need you wander any longer up and down the world in quest of happiness? You find it here, and are welcome to enjoy it among us. You have already a waggon, oxen, and saddle horses; these are the chief things requisite in order to set up a farmer; there are yet uncultivated places enough in this neighbourhood, proper either for pasturage or tillage, so that you may choose out of an extensive tract of land the spot that pleases

1776.  
January.

pleases you best. Here are people enough, who will send you that part of their cattle to keep which they cannot conveniently look after themselves, on conditions that you shall have the young ones produced by them for your trouble. In this way, many young beginners have acquired a competency in a few years. With your knowledge of disorders and plants, you may render yourself serviceable to your neighbours, and now and then get a heifer or a calf. In short, I will venture to prophesy, that you will soon have cows and sheep in abundance. Yet there is still somewhat wanting, which is most essential to your happiness; this is, a prudent and discreet wife: take my advice and look about you, and I will take upon me to assure you, that you will not long be without one in this country."

This advice, so consonant to the voice of nature, and coming with such kind intention from the fair sex, could not but greatly affect me: it is remarkable, however, that the poor woman who gave it me, had herself a bad husband.

As a farther proof, that it is not so much to the different degrees in which nature has shed her bounty over the place a man lives in, as to himself and his fellow-creatures, that he ought to impute his felicity, I had the chagrin to see the peace of this happy spot interrupted by the jarring of two neighbours.

Having now for some time departed in my narration from the order of my journal, I will here resume it.—I staid at *Agter Bruntyes-boogte* till the 21st day of January. During this time my oxen, which before were very lean, had got

1776.  
January.

into good condition; and we ourselves took care, by drinking plentifully of butter-milk, and by doing honour to the good fare set before us in great abundance by these worthy rustics, to make ourselves amends for the hunger, thirst, and other hardships we had suffered for a whole month in the desert. Among other delicacies, we were entertained on the 3d of January with a dish, as delicious as it was singular, taken from a couple of score of calves which had been castrated that day. The women too ate of this dish without blushing. I have already mentioned, that I had had on my way hither some little tendency to the gout; and at this place it increased so much, that on the 8th and 9th of this month I could scarcely stand on either foot. A stiffness with which the sinews and articulations of my feet were affected, and which was attended with an acute pain and dry heat diffused over the skin itself, occasioned me to think of the vapour bath, as being a powerfully emollient remedy. The quick relief I had seen afforded by artificial warm baths to two gouty patients in Africa, as well as the benefits arising in similar disorders from the use of natural warm baths in this country, added to my not being able to bear either the pain or loss of time occasioned by this disorder, induced me likewise soon to make the experiment on myself, and thereby entirely overcome both the complaint in my foot, and the common prejudice, that the gout will not bear water.

The apparatus was to the full as simple and easy as the remedy. My feet were placed twice a day for three or four hours at a time, on a stick laid across a tub of warm water, in which the steam and heat were confined by means of cloths,

cloths, and kept up by the addition of heated stones. At intervals I likewise put my foot down into the water, but this did not seem to produce such speedy and evident relief as the vapour did, but rather produced a swelling in the feet, with some degree of spasm. Within a few days I was entirely recovered, and about the same time had the pleasure of restoring, by means of this bath, a farmer's wife, who had besides a bad habit of body, in some degree to the use of her feet; though for several weeks before, by reason of the pain and swelling in them, she had not been able to set them on the ground.

1776.  
January.

Since my return to my native country, I have not been able to persuade any gouty person in similar circumstances to make use of this remedy; though I can now likewise appeal to the universally as well as justly celebrated Dr. TISSOT, who, in a case he has given to the public, endeavours to oppose the prejudices entertained against lukewarm pediluviums in the gout. (Vid. *Essai sur les Maladies des Gens du monde*, p. 142. Lausanne, 1772.)

The farmer's wife above-mentioned, was one of the two patients on whose account I was obliged to make a longer stay in this place, as I have already intimated. The other was a boy of ten years of age, who kept his bed upwards of six months with a fistulous ulcer in the thigh, accompanied with a hectic fever and great pain, all which were supposed to have proceeded merely from his having jumped from off a waggon three feet high. The part afflicted with pain, which afterwards began to ulcerate, had been dressed ever since, pursuant to a method as commonly practised in this country as it is prejudicial, with hot and irritat-

1776.  
January.

ing cataplasms made of aromatic herbs. But after I had enlarged the wound, and had dressed it for a considerable time with a salve composed of honey mixed with a little oil and melted wax, the patient's diet all the while consisting only of wort, milk, and greens, with now and then a little bread, I was able to extract a splinter of a bone three inches long, and three fingers broad, after which the whole seemed disposed to heal very fast.

Notwithstanding that by simple and very easy remedies of this kind, the lives of the African rustics might be for the most part saved, and the calamities attendant on life be mitigated; yet in this simple and truly pastoral way of life, so universally celebrated for its felicity, and in the midst of their delightful parks and meadows, still they are so far unfortunate, that, when they are attacked by any disorder, they are either entirely ignorant of the remedies best adapted to the cure of it, or for the most part apply them very improperly; and at the same time are at the distance of many hundred, and, indeed, one may say, some thousands of miles from those, from whose advice alone and assistance they have reason to expect relief: and in so far at least is this much-vaunted pastoral way of life, with all its simplicity and concomitant ignorance, less to be prized than our more populous and better regulated societies in towns and cities, where, besides the advantages redounding to mankind from all the other sciences, that of medicine in particular remarkably contributes to the happiness enjoyed by mortals in this life.

It appeared to me very singular, that the colonists had very little, and, indeed, I may say, no knowledge at all of  
one

1776.  
January.

one of the commonest and most troublesome disorders of any they were subject to, which was worms. Adults, and even elderly persons, seemed to be more universally troubled with this complaint than children; particularly with the tape worm, the symptoms of which were likewise often plainly to be discovered in men of the healthiest appearance. Besides a great number of the more usual symptoms, which ascertain the presence of these animals, most of the patients complained of an oppression at the breast, and an anxiety about the heart (*borst quaal en benaauwde borst*;) for which reason the greater part of them, some of their own heads, and others in pursuance of the advice of quacks at the Cape, kept themselves weak and low by a spare diet and remedies against the consumption of the lungs, and often kept on pertinaciously in this treatment of themselves; though the longer they continued it, the worse they grew. Nay, under an apprehension of their lungs being diseased, they had even given up their beloved brandy; though at the same time they owned they never had observed that it was in any ways prejudicial to them, in respect to the principal complaint. Having, therefore, during the oppression on the chest, the swoonings, or the difficulty of respiration with which they were seized, been persuaded by me to take a sup or two of it, especially when the virtues of it were heightened by *wilde alfies* (a kind of wormwood) being infused in it, and they having always found instant relief for the time, their joy can hardly be conceived, which was not less (as they sometimes jocosely confessed) on account of their being able to enjoy the sweets of this delicious remedy, than of the effect it had

in

1776.  
January.

in relieving their complaints; they likewise rejoiced in finding themselves able to stand this proof of their lungs not being affected, as in consequence of their fear on that account, they would hardly have ventured to follow my advice, had I not, on the first suspicion I had of their disorder, informed them of most of their complaints beforehand, by reckoning up the symptoms usually attendant on worms. Garlick, the buds of the *wilde alfies* above-mentioned, salt, oil, ox-gall, and aloes, were, of all vermifuges, the easiest to be procured here; and were given them, together with some resin of jalap which I had brought with me; but two of VEREIRA'S relations rashly attacked their worms with garlick, both taken alone and mixed with every thing they ate, and by this means soon voided a number of worms, and got rid of all their complaints. One of them said he had discharged part of a worm with legs and feet, which was grey at top, but yellow under the belly like *rups*, or caterpillars, which are changed into chrysalises, and afterwards become butterflies. He had likewise observed the *exuvia*, or skins, of this kind of worm in his ordinary evacuations.

Besides the satisfaction I found in being useful, and shewing my gratitude to these hospitable rustics, by giving them my advice on this, as well as on other occasions, as well as by the distribution of some medicines which I had brought with me, and always gave away gratis in the course of my journey, I by this means likewise got more into their good graces, and procured assistance more readily, and more authentic information, than I perhaps could have done with money: so that the slender stock of medical know-

1776.  
January.

knowledge I was possessed of, proved of greater service to me than I could have imagined; not to mention the astonishment and veneration which it excited in these good people, and which often reminded me of the proverb, *dans le pais des aveugles les borgnes sont rois.*

The cause, why worms are so common a disorder in this colony, I dare not undertake to explain. It may be suspected that in many people they are hereditary, and are increased by a copious milk diet. Others, perhaps, were infested by these animals, by means of the foul and putrid water which they were for the most part obliged to put up with in their hunting expeditions, and in their journey to the Cape; the men in particular, appearing to be troubled with this complaint. With respect to these country people, there does not seem to be much room for attributing the disorder to fish, as in the fresh water and rivers of these regions there is hardly any to be found. When, however, these rustics get to the Cape, they generally take care not to want for fresh fish. The towns-people, on the contrary, who live a good deal upon fresh fish, are not in proportion so much troubled with worms; but then they have pure water to drink; milk is rather scarce with them; while, on the other hand, they do not use to stint themselves in the articles of wine and spirituous liquors.

On the 5th I rode out a hunting along with two farmers, being chiefly in quest of the *gnu*, the animal I have described at page 131 of this Volume. In these parts we found large herds of them, and shot a female *gnu* quite through the body; notwithstanding which, she ran, though tottering, to the distance of eighty or an hundred paces from us before she fell.

1776.  
January.

fell. Being mounted on fleet horses, we were able to ride by them all, and separate one of the herds from the rest, from whence we drove away a calf, which we took home with us alive. It was of this that I afterwards made the dissection, to which I have referred in page 133, for the proof of what I there advanced. The height of this animal was two feet, and the length from the ears to the tail measured nearly the same; the tail itself was six inches long, and very hairy, with white and bristly hairs at the tip. To conclude, the predominant colour in this animal is a very pale or light brown; the belly is white, the nose black; there is a black circle round the eyes; it is likewise black about the ears, and its forehead is of a dark brown colour; the mane is black, two inches long, and rather of a bristly nature, being set off on each side by hairs equal to its length, which cover the neck, and which are twice as long as they are in other parts of the body; the beard too inclines more to grey, or is of a lighter colour than the rest of the animal's body. I had likewise previously seen and examined another tame one of the same size, which was intended for a present for the governor: it was feared, however, that this, as well as the young hartbeests which they were endeavouring to bring up tame, would be subject to a kind of furor or madness. The cry of the young gnu was sometimes *onje*, and at other times *navond*, a good deal resembling the *nonje* of the colonists (meaning miss,) and their usual contraction of the words *goeden avond*, or good evening; so that in the dark, the sound might easily be mistaken for the voice or salutation of a child. The roasted flesh of this gnu-fawn, the animal being extremely young, was soft and flabby.

On

On the day I have mentioned we likewise shot a *quagga*, which was almost entirely devoured within a few hours by birds of prey, after having, according to their usual custom, begun with the eyes.

1776.  
January.

An animal of the height of eighteen inches was known to the farmers here by the name of the *grey jackal*, as it approaches pretty near the common jackal in size, as well as in the shape of its head and body; but to judge from the teeth alone, as far as I can recollect them at present, the *grey jackal* seems rather to bear the characteristic marks by which the *viverra*, or weasel kind is distinguished in the *System of Nature*, Edit. XII.

The hair with which the grey jackal was covered, was a mixture of light grey and black; so that this creature was of a dark ash colour all over, excepting towards the tip of the tail, which, for the length of three inches, was quite black; it was besides pretty bushy, and reached down to the animal's heels. The hairs, indeed, over the whole body were pretty long and soft, but on the back they were about twice as long as in other parts, so that they appeared to form a brush or comb: for which reason, this animal may for the present be called the *viverra cristata*. I say *for the present*, as well on the account that the stuffed skin of this creature was stolen out of my waggon by some hounds with which we had been out a hunting, before I had time to draw up a more accurate description of it, as likewise because it is very difficult as yet to define the genera belonging to the order of *feræ*. I made a drawing of the grey jackal's liver, and on going to examine it with this view, I found it divided in a singular manner. The right lung

1776.  
January.

likewise had four lobes, and the left three. The stomach had nothing but ants in it, or, to speak more properly, the white *termites* before-mentioned; yet, that it may not be supposed from this circumstance, that the animal here spoken of belongs to the genus of the *myrmecophaga* of LINNÆUS, it may be proper to mention here, that the character of this genus is the total want of teeth; and that, exclusively of our Swedish bears, the Hottentots themselves are likewise very fond of this food.

This day we hunted another animal, which was called the *onkjes jackal*, and seemed with respect to shape and size, in some measure to resemble the *grey jackal*, but was of a deep brown colour. It now made its escape from us by a subterraneous passage. It has obtained the name of *onkjes*, in consequence of its digging up, and feeding upon, the bulbs and roots of flowers. The *onkjes jackal*, moreover, is supposed to be more common than the grey, and is, perhaps, a kind of badger. Neither this creature nor the former were, as far as I could find, known to any body but the farmers in this neighbourhood.

The common *jackal*, or the *jackal* properly so called, nearly resembles our European fox in its form, manners, and disposition; and here, at least, is not known to assemble in packs, for the purpose of hunting. Neither is what authors have advanced concerning the hideous cry and voracity of the jackal applicable to this quadruped, these qualities being probably peculiar to the hyæna and wild dog, with which animals it has been by some means confounded. A couple of skins which I brought home with me, three feet in length, with a tail somewhat above a foot long, entirely correspond,

1776.  
January.

correspond, with respect to hair and colour, with M. DAUBERTON'S description of the *cbacal*, (BUFFON, Tom. XIII. p. 268) excepting the spots on the fore legs; and likewise resemble M. SCHREBER'S coloured plate of the *canis mesomel*, or *capische schakalt*, Tab. XCV. p. 370. This is likewise Mr. PENNANT'S *jackal*, Vol. I. p. 242.

The predominant colour in this animal is a reddish yellow, the legs in particular are of a pale gold colour; under the belly, and on the inside of the legs, the colour inclines to white; the nose and ears are of a reddish cast; the head grey; the back part of the neck, together with the whole back, are covered with a large dark grey spot of the shape of a lancet, with the point towards the tail; which spot, as M. DAUBENTON has well remarked, is composed of black and white circular streaks of hair intermixed; the tail is partly grey, and partly of an umber colour, but at the tip black. I remember that once I saw the fur of a foetus of a *jackal*, which was of a very fine yellow colour, and instead of a blackish grey had a dark brown spot upon its back.

The *ratel*, so called in Africa both by the colonists and Hottentots, I have given a drawing of in the Swedish Transactions for the year 1777, p. 147. Tab. IV. and at the same time described it by the name of the *viverra ratel*. (I have likewise annexed a figure of it at Plate V. of this Volume.) By the colour, it should seem to be the very same species of animal which M. DE LA CAILLE saw about *Picquet-berg*, and has mentioned at page 182, by the name of the *blereau puant*; though this author did not himself observe any disagreeable odour in the animal, and I, for my part, have never heard

1776.  
January.

the least mention made of it; at the same time that M. DE LA CAILLE does not say a single syllable concerning the singular œconomy of the animal, and moreover describes the claws as being somewhat smaller than they really are, particularly on the hind feet. Les deux trous oblongs a l'ouverture de la gueule, dans lesquels la peau rentre, according to the observation made by M. DE LA CAILLE, appear to deserve a more accurate investigation and description.

In SCHREBER on the *mammalia*, p. 450, Tab. CXXV. there is a description and drawing of it under the denomination of the *stinkbinks*, or the *viverra Capensis*; though, in my opinion, the claws and tail in this figure are too short, and the head too thick and clumsy, and too black underneath. M. SCHREBER mentions his having heard, that this animal is fond of honey; a circumstance confirmed by the following account, which I have before inserted in the Swedish Transactions.

In this part of Africa there is to be seen a considerable number of holes and subterraneous passages, some of which are actually inhabited, while others have been previously formed, but since deserted by the *hystrix cristata*, a sort of *mus jaculus*, or the *jerboa Capensis*, the *jackal*, the *mole*, the *sus Æthiopicus*, with several species of *viverræ*. Just within the apertures of these cavities, and of the subterraneous passages which are blocked up in part by the ground having given way, the bees most commonly use to make their nests, especially as trees fit for their purpose are seldom to be found. The *ratel*, a sort of weasel or badger, by nature destined to be the adversary of the bees, and the unwelcome visitor of their habitations, is likewise endued with

1776.  
January.  


with a particular faculty for discovering and attacking them within their entrenchments. His long claws, besides assisting him in digging the dark subterraneous passages which serve him for an asylum, are likewise of use to him in the occupation he is frequently employed in of undermining whole colonies of bees. As a man placed at the mast-head can easiest descry a sail or land at a great distance about sun-set, so probably this time of the day is the most convenient for the ratel to look out for his supper; for he is said likewise to be particularly attentive to his business about sun-set, and will sit and hold one of his paws before his eyes, in order to modify the rays of the sun, so as to render them inoffensive to his organs of sight, and at the same time to have a distinct view of the object of his pursuit: and when, in consequence of peering in this manner on each side of his paw opposite to the sun, he sees any bees fly, he knows that they are at this time going strait forward to their own habitation, and consequently takes care to keep in the same direction as that in which they fly, in order to find them. He has besides, the sagacity as well as the Hottentots, the Caffres, and the peasants of the Cape, to follow a little bird, which flies on by degrees with the alluring note of *cherr, cherr, cherr*, and guides its followers to the bees' nest. This self-interested betrayer of the bees, to which I have many times been obliged for the honey I have eaten in the course of my travels through the desert, is the little *cuculus indicator*, which I have described and given a drawing of in the Phil. Transf. and propose to make mention of a little farther on.

As

1776.  
January.

As the *ratel's* hairs are stiff and harsh, so its hide is tough, and the animal itself is difficult to kill. The colonists and the Hottentots both assert, that it is almost impossible to kill this creature, without giving it a great number of violent blows on the nose; on which account they destroy it by shooting it, or plunging a knife into its body. The shortness of the *ratel's* legs will not permit him to make his escape by flight, when pursued by the hounds; he is able, however, to extricate himself from their clutches by biting and scratching them in a violent degree; while, on the other hand, he is perfectly well defended from the assaults of their teeth by the toughness of his hide: for when a hound endeavours to bite him, it can lay hold only on the *ratel's* tough hide; which in this case instantly separates from the creature's body or flesh, as it is reported to lie loose from the skin, as though it were within a sack; so that when any body catches hold of him by the hind part of his neck, and that even pretty near his head, he is able to turn round, as it were, in his skin, and bite the arm of the person that seizes him. It is a remarkable circumstance, that a number of hounds, which collectively are able to tear a lion of a moderate size in pieces, are said sometimes to be forced to leave the *ratel* only dead to appearance. This report seems to be confirmed by the circumstance of M. DE LA CAILLE'S *blereau puant's* still being alive, after the hounds had dragged it away to the waggon. Thus far, however, is certain, that on the fur of the *ratel* I have brought home with me, there is scarcely the mark of a bite to be seen, though it had been attacked and worried by a number of hounds. Is it not probable, that

1776.  
January.

that nature, which has destined the ratel for the destruction of bees, may have bestowed on it a hide so much tougher than those she has given to other animals of the viverra kind, merely for the purpose of defending it from the stings of these insects? Or may not this creature's food, which consists of wax and honey, make it so tough and difficult to kill?

Those bees nests which are built up in trees, are in no danger whatever from the ratel. In the first transports of his rage at having fought after these bees in vain, he uses to gnaw or bite the trunk of these trees; and these bites are sure marks for the Hottentots, that a bees nest is to be found up in that tree. I should myself have harboured many doubts concerning all these circumstances attributed to the ratel, had I not obtained various accounts of this curious animal, entirely corresponding with each other, from many experienced farmers and Hottentots living in different parts of the country.

As I was not fortunate enough to catch a ratel myself, I must be contented with giving such a description of it here, as I have been able to make from this creature's skin.

The *fore teeth*, six in each jaw, mostly of the same size, flat at top, probably in consequence of being worn away; *canine teeth*, two in each jaw, very strong and large when compared with the size of the animal, but obtuse, (probably likewise in consequence of their being worn away;) the *grinders*, about six in number, had, as well as the others, a yellow cast, perhaps from the animal feeding upon honey. The *tongue* was sharp, and the *papillæ* sharp and turned back, as in cats.

1776.  
January.

The *legs* are short; toes five on each of the fore feet, armed with projecting claws an inch and a half long, but those of the hind feet no more than half that length. These claws have a sharp edge, which half way up the fore part of it is double, or rather excavated with a deep furrow; a circumstance that apparently greatly assists the animal in digging. There is nothing like ear-laps to be seen on this creature, excepting a trifling rim round about a rather large aperture, in which is placed the organ of hearing.

*Colour*; the forehead, crown of the head, nape of the neck, shoulders, back, and tail are of an ash colour; the nose, and the part round the eyes, and on the cheek-bone, the ears, the lower part of the neck, the breast, belly, thighs, and legs, are of a black hue inclining to brown; as are likewise the extreme limits of the ash-coloured part just mentioned, which are moreover separated from the black colour by means of a light grey list an inch broad, running from the ear quite back to the tail.

*Size of the skin*: From the tip of the nose to the tail forty inches; length of the tail twelve inches; that of the claws, taken together with the whole phalanx, or all the toes of the fore feet, one inch and three quarters; of those of the hind feet one inch.

Two other small animals, which probably likewise belong to the *viverra* genus, I had only a hasty glimpse of in this colony. The one we saw and gave chase to between the two Fish rivers, made its escape from us, however, by running into a hole under ground, and seemed to be somewhat less than a cat, though longer in proportion. The colour of it was a bright red. Of the other  
fort

fort I saw two at once in the vicinity of *Niez-bout-kloof*, when they instantly ran out of my sight, and hid themselves in a bush. They appeared to be of a coal-black colour, and above a foot high; yet I am not certain, whether they were not *onkjes jackals*, the animal I have already made mention of at page 176 of this Volume. The former of these likewise, I mean the light or rose-coloured animal, might be, for aught I know, the *zerda*, or *vulpes minimus farenfis* of M. SKIOLDEBRAND, the Swedish consul at Algiers, (vide the *Swedish Transactions* for 1777, page 265) not being able during the chase, to attend to its ears so accurately as I could have wished; and at the same time having been informed, that there was a very small animal, with long ears, which lived under ground, and was not unfrequently seen on the plains in *Camdebo*, but was difficult to catch, especially as it never went far from its hole. In this point likewise, it answers to the description of the *zerda* quoted above; but this again seems inconsistent with the account given of it by Mr. BRUCE, who says it lives in palm-trees, (on the fruit of which it subsists,) in *Libya*, to the south of the *Palus Tritonidis*. (Vide BUFFON'S *Animal Anonyme*, Supplement, Tom. III. page 148, Tab. XIX.) It is possible, indeed, that this creature is to be found in *Libya*; but I have been informed by M. SKIOLDEBRAND, that Mr. BRUCE had previously seen this animal in *Algiers*, (where both these gentlemen were consuls together) and had employed the same painter as M. SKIOLDEBRAND did, to make a drawing of it; and hence it is, that on comparing the two figures, viz. of the animal from *Libya*, and of that from *Algiers*, it plainly appears,

1776.  
January.



1776.  
January.

that they are taken from each other, or else from one and the same original.

Many of M. SKIOLDEBRAND's friends, and among them M. NICANDER, one of the secretaries of the Royal Academy of Sciences in Sweden, have seen a figure of the *zerda* represented in its natural size and colour, many years ago, in M. SKIOLDEBRAND's superb collection; but could not persuade this gentleman to ornament the Swedish Transactions with it before, as, the animal having unfortunately escaped from him, before he could examine its teeth, and other particulars, he had waited a long time, though in vain, in hopes of procuring some better information from *Algiers* with respect to these points. M. SKIOLDEBRAND could not find at the bottom of this creature's large and beautiful ears, which were of a rosy hue, any traces of a perforation; indeed these perforations would easily be filled up, and would consequently become very inconvenient to an animal like this, which is obliged to burrow and live under the sand. He supposes that providence has made good this defect, by some membrane lying not very deep in the ear. Mr. PENNANT follows M. SKIOLDEBRAND in the account he gives of this animal in Vol. I. p. 248, at the same time referring it to the *dog* genus.

The *bee-cuckow*, (*cuculus indicator*) which I made mention of just above, in describing the *ratel* at p. 181, deserves to have more particular notice taken of it in this place. It has, however, nothing remarkable in it with regard to its size and colour, as, on a cursory view, it appears in these points not to differ from the common sparrow; excepting indeed,

1776.  
January.

that it is somewhat larger, and rather of a lighter colour, with a little yellow spot on each shoulder, and the feathers of its tail dashed with white.

It is, indeed, merely with a view to its own interest, that this *cuckoo* discovers the bees-nests to man and the *ratel* race, as it is extremely fond both of honey and bees-eggs; and it knows that when a bees-nest is plundered, some of it is shed, which consequently falls to its share, or else some part is left by the plunderers as a reward for its services. Nevertheless, the way in which this bird communicates to others the discovery it has made, is as surprising as it is well adapted to the purpose.

The morning and evening are probably its principal meal times; at least it is then that it shews the greatest inclination to come forth, and with the grating cry of *cherr, cherr, cherr*, to excite, as it were, the attention of the *ratel*, as well as of the Hottentots and colonists. Somebody then generally repairs to the place whence the sound proceeds, when the bird, all the while continually repeating its cry of *cherr, cherr*, flies on slowly and by degrees towards the quarter where the swarm of bees have taken up their abode. The persons thus invited accordingly follow, taking great care at the same time not to frighten their guide with any unusual noise, or by means of a large company, but rather, as I have seen done by one of the shrewdest of my *Boshies-men*, to answer it now and then with a soft and very gentle whistle, by way of letting the bird know that its call is attended to. I have observed, that when the bees-nest was at a good distance, the bird, for the most part, made long stages, or

1776.  
January.

flights, waiting for its sporting companion between each flight, and farther exciting him; but flew to shorter distances, and repeated its cry more frequently, and with greater earnestness, in proportion as they approached nearer to the bees-nest. I likewise saw, with astonishment, what I had been previously assured of by others, viz. that when this bird has, in consequence of its great impatience, got too far a-head of its followers, especially when, by reason of the roughness or unevenness of the ground, they have not been able to keep pace with it, it has flown back to meet them, and with redoubled cries, denoting still greater impatience, has upbraided them for being so tardy. Finally, when it has come to the bees-nest, whether this be built in the cleft of a rock, in a hollow tree, or in some cavity in the earth, it hovers over the spot for the space of a few seconds, a circumstance which I myself have been eye-witness to twice; after which it sits in silence, and for the most part concealed in some neighbouring tree or bush, in expectation of what may happen, and with a view of coming in for its share of the booty. It is probable, that this bird always hovers, more or less, in the manner just mentioned, over the bees-nest, before it hides itself, though people do not always pay attention to this circumstance: at all events, however, one may be assured that the bees-nest is very near, when, after the bird has taken one to some distance, it is on a sudden silent. In a place where we halted a couple of days, my Hottentots were conducted by a bee-cuckow, that was rather shy and obscure in its expressions, backwards and forwards several times to one and the same spot, till one of them, who was more attentive to the bird than

than the rest, thought of looking out there for the nest itself.

1776.  
January.



Having, in consequence of the bird's directions, dug up the bees-nest, or otherwise come at it, and plundered it, they usually, by way of acknowledgment, leave it a considerable portion of the worst part, or that part of the comb in which the young bees are hatching; and which, however, is probably for the bird the most delicate morsel, and indeed, is by no means looked upon as the worst, even by the Hottentots. I was informed by my Boshies-men, as well as by the colonists, that a man who makes it his constant business to go after the bees, should not at first be too grateful and generous to this officious bird, but leave for it only just as much as will serve to stimulate its appetite; by which means it will be induced, in hopes of obtaining a more liberal reward, to discover another swarm of bees, if there be any such in the neighbourhood. Though there are plenty of wild bees round about Cape Town, yet both the bird itself and the peculiar property it has of discovering honey to others, were entirely unknown there; neither could I, when I first heard it spoken of at *Groot-Vaders-bosch*, consider it in any other light than that of a fable; especially as at the same time I saw a lad who was out after one of these birds, fail in the object of his pursuit. In this case, however, there was great reason to lay the blame on the closeness and compactness of the wood, and the greater than usual shyness of the bird. My Hottentots from *Buffel-jaagts-rivier* and *Zwellendam* assured me since, that they had likewise been acquainted with this bird at the places just mentioned, where they were born,  
but

1776.  
January.

but owned at the same time, that it was there uncommon as well as shy; nor did it direct them to the honey so readily and distinctly, as in the tract of country where we then were in the desert, and near the river *t'Kau-t'kai*, or *Great Viscb-river*.

By collating this last remark with my account of the *cuculus indicator*, or honey-guide, inserted in the *Philosophical Transactions*, Vol. LXVII. page 38 and 43, it will appear, that a geographical error has been suffered to take place there; probably in consequence of their being obliged, as my account was written in English, to alter this passage, so as to make it approach nearer to the idiom of the English language.

Though I had frequently in the desert, and once at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, seen this bird, which, on account of the singular property it is endued with, is called by the colonists *boning-wyzer*, or the honey-guide, and, indeed, had not unfrequently reaped the fruits of its services, yet I had not an opportunity of shooting it till I was on the road to return home, when I one day pursued it, the little creature all the while flying before me with its cheering note of *cherr, cherr*. This, however, offended my Boshiesmen not a little: and though I had previously promised an ample reward, consisting of glass beads and tobacco, to my *Zwellendam* Hottentots, on condition that they would assist me in catching and shooting a *boning-wyzer*, yet I found them too much the bird's friends to betray it; a circumstance that gave me great pleasure, as it shewed that these people were in general possessed of good and grateful hearts; though

though ingratitude, I am very sorry to say it, is a crime, by no means rarely to be met with among men.

1776.  
January.



While I resided in the interior part of Africa, I was shewn a bird's-nest, which several farmers assured me was that of the bee-cuckow. It resembled the nests of certain finches, which are found in those parts, and was formed of fine shreds of bark, interwoven and plaited together in the shape of a bottle. The neck or aperture of it hung downwards, and a plaited cord, made of the same kind of bark as the nest, hung, as it were, in a swing, cross-wise, over and below the opening, being fastened by both ends to the brim of this same aperture, and was certainly intended for the bird to rest itself and roost upon.

The following description of this bird was drawn up from the two which I shot, and which were supposed to be hens; for the cock is said to have its neck (*capistrum*) encircled with a black ring.

*Rostrum crassiusculum, versus basin fuscum, apice luteum. Angulus oris usque infra oculos extensus. Nares postremæ ad basin Rostri, supremæ vicinæ, ut carinula dorsali saltem separarentur, oblongæ, margine prominulo. Pili aliquot ad basin Rostri, præcipue in mandibula inferiore; Lingua plana subsagittata. Oculorum Irides ferrugineo-griseæ; Palpebræ nudæ, nigre. Pedes nigri scansorii; Tibiæ brevis, Ungues tenues, nigri. Pileus lætè griseus è pennis brevibus latiusculis. Gula, Jugulum, Pectus, sordide alba, cum aliquo vivere vix notabili in pectore. Dorsum & Uropygium ferrugineo-grisea. Abdomen Crissumque alba. Femora tecta pennis albis, macula longitudinali nigra notatis. Alarum Tectrices Superiores, omnes griseo-fuscæ exceptis summis aliquot,*

1776.  
January.

*aliquot, quæ flavis apicibus formant, maculum flavam in humeris exiguam* ☉ *à plumis scapularibus sæpe tectam. Tectrices infra alam albide, harum Supremæ ex albedo nigroque maculatæ. Remiges Primarii 8, R. Secundarii 6, R. Omnes supra fusci, subtus cinereo fusci. Alulæ griseo-fuscæ; Cauda cuneiformis, reëtricibus 12: harum duæ intermedia longiores angustiores, supra ☉ infra æruginoso-fuscæ; proximæ duæ fuliginosæ, margine interiore albicantes; Duæ utrinque his proximæ albæ apice fuscæ, ☉ exterius ad basin macula nigra notatæ: extima utrinque reliquis brevior, Alba apice fusca, macula nigra vix ulla ad basin. Alæ complicatæ caudæ partem quartem attingunt. Longitudo ab apice Rostri, ad extremam Caudæ circiter septem uncias pedis Anglicani explet. Rostrum à basi superiore ad apicem semiunciale.*

Since my description of the *cuculus indicator* was printed in the *Phil. Transf.* I have seen in LOBO's Travels to Abyssinia, published by LE GRAND in 1728, (a book to which I was referred by M. B. BERGIUS, one of the directors of the bank,) and a gentleman of extensive reading, the following account, which deserves to be quoted here verbatim.

“ The *moroc*, or honey-bird, is furnished with a peculiar instinct, or faculty of discovering honey. They have here multitudes of various kinds, some are tame like ours, and form their combs in hives: of the wild ones some place their honey in hollow trees, others hide it in holes in the ground, which they keep extremely clean, and at the same time cover so carefully, that though they are commonly in the highway, they are seldom found, unless  
by



by the *moroc's* assistance. The honey thus prepared under ground, is to the full as good as that which is made in hives : I have only found it a little blacker ; and cannot help imagining it to be the same, with that which St. JOHN lived on in the wilderness. When the *moroc* has discovered any honey, he repairs immediately to the road-side, and when he sees a traveller, sings and claps his wings, making many motions to invite him to follow him ; and when he perceives him coming, flies before him from tree to tree, till he comes to the place where the bees have stored their treasure, and then begins to sing melodiously. The Abyssin takes the honey, without failing to leave part of it for the bird, to reward him for his information."

There is good reason to suppose from this passage, that the *moroc* of Abyssinia and the *bee-cuckoo*, which I have described above, are one and the same bird ; but if this be the case, it should seem, that Father LOBO himself had not been an eye-witness of this singular kind of chase, or else that he has not given an accurate description of it. Neither, indeed, have I ever found the honey which has been made under-ground, blacker than that which comes out of the hives ; but on the contrary, full as good as any other honey whatever, that in the desert particularly having a finer flavour than any I ever tasted. Though as delicacies did not greatly abound here, and I was obliged to live chiefly on animal food, I cannot place any great dependence upon the niceness of my taste at that time. My Hottentots, and even two of the colonists, ate likewise the young bees and the honey-comb itself, or the nest, looking upon it as the most delicate part of the whole. The honey

1776.  
January.

here was fine and mellow; and appeared, without having undergone any purification whatever, to be tolerably free from wax.—I neither saw nor heard of any one in all Africa that kept tame bees, excepting in the country about Constantia, where a young lad, the son of a colonist, used sometimes to set out empty chests and boxes, into which a wild swarm would enter without fail in the space of a few days and settle; but the hive was generally taken almost immediately by this greedy *amateur*, and was likewise partly stolen by liquorish slaves, among whom those who were natives of Madagascar had a particular knack at finding wild bees and honey. As in the tracts of country last-mentioned, besides other flowers, there grow in particular many different sorts of heaths, the culture of bees might in these places be carried to a very great height. Near the *Cape* I found the wild honey of an inferior quality. Whether this proceeded from the great abundance of heath in the above-mentioned districts, or from my being more fastidious and nice when I was at the latter place, I am not able to determine.

The *jerbua Capensis*, which I enumerated a little above at page 180 among the animals in the ruins of whose subterraneous dwellings the bees, in default of trees fit for their purpose, build their nests, is described by Dr. J. R. FORSTER in the Swedish Transactions for 1778, page 108, with some remarks of mine annexed, l. c. page 119. On this head likewise, the reader may consult the compilation referred to above, called *Nouv. Descript. &c.* together with M. PALLAS's *de Murium Genere*, page 87, in which book it was afterwards referred to under the denomination of the *mus Caffer*.

*Caffer.* By the colonists it is called *berg-baas*, or *spring-baas*, (the mountain or bounding hare) and lives upon roots and other vegetables, his principal haunts being in the vicinity of *Stellen-bosch* and *Camdebo*. It is nearly of the size and colour of a common hare, but its hind legs, by means of which it is said to be able to take a leap twenty feet in length, are much longer and slenderer; its fore legs, on the other hand, are extremely short, the animal seldom supporting itself upon them, being generally in a sitting posture, and using them as hands to convey the food to its mouth. It is likewise able, with great expedition, by means of its fore paws, and with the assistance of its long projecting teeth, to dig holes for itself and passages underground; though it does not by any means experience the greatest degree of security in this asylum, on account of the dykes and cuts made by the colonists to their cornfields and plantations, which likewise find their way into these subterraneous passages; so that the *jerbuas*, which are thus in danger of being drowned in their own habitations, are obliged to evacuate them with the greatest precipitation, in consequence of which they are frequently pursued and taken.

Where the inhabitants of this country have an opportunity (that of a neighbouring mountain, for instance) of making the dykes and sluices here alluded to, they do not omit by means of them to drown the moles likewise, as they are called, which infest this colony, and which are, in fact, a kind of rat with short tails. The one sort is less than the other, but is most common round about the *Cape*; and from the white spots on its head is called *bleesmol*, and

1776.  
January.



1776.  
January.

is the *mus Capensis* of Messrs. PENNANT, SCHREBER, and PALLAS, and the long-toothed *marmot* of Mr. BROWN, page 112, Plate XLVI. which plate exhibits a coloured representation of this animal; but the figure, which is the same with that in the compilation we have frequently referred to, as well as with that in BUFFON's Supplement, Tom. III. is not remarkably good.

The other species, which is called the *sand-mol*, is the *mus Africanus* of Mr. PENNANT. This is in every part shaped like the former, but is without any spots; and though of a mouse colour, is of a lighter hue, its tail being in proportion equally short with that of the other, but flattened both at top and underneath, though furnished with hairs standing out in the same manner. It bears a great resemblance to the figure of the *mus talpinus* in PALLAS and SCHREBER, but differs from that animal in having a compressed tail, as I have just before mentioned; as likewise with respect to its body, which I have found to measure a foot at the highest, though even then it was twice or thrice as big as the *mus Capensis*, or the *mus talpinus*. These two different species, the *mus Caffer* and the *mus Capensis*, are very troublesome vermin, particularly in orchards and vineyards; and are caught with snares, which fall upon them at the apertures of their holes, and are likewise frequently killed with pistols, which shoot them through the body, on their touching in the slightest manner a thread tied to the trigger. The *mus Caffer* is particularly unwieldy and clumsy in its make, and is consequently slow in running, making its escape with difficulty when it is found near its nest; though, on the other hand, when it is laid hold on, it throws the  
anterior

1776.  
January.

anterior part of its body about to the right and left with great activity and alertness, in order to fasten upon its enemy with its teeth. In this particular I have, as well as many of the colonists, discovered a great resemblance between the rhinoceros and the sand-mole, which, indeed, proceeds merely from the smallness of the eyes and obscurity of vision in both these animals.

The *talpa Asiatica*, LINN. the *talpa Siberica* of PENNANT, SEBA, and KLEIN; the *talpa aurea* of BRISSON, PALLAS, and SCHREBER; and the *variable mole* of BROWN, are one and the same animal, which comes from the *Cape*; and which not only has been erroneously attributed to Siberia, but likewise, on account of the number and shape of its teeth being unknown, has been hitherto improperly referred to the *mole* genus; though, in fact, it belongs to that of the *shrew* or *sores*, as plainly appears from the following description of the teeth, which I made after a specimen I brought home from the Cape preserved in spirits. *Dentes superiores anteriores* 2 cuneati, approximati. *D. inferiores anteriores* 4 subulati, horum *intermediis brevioribus*. *D. laterales* in utraque maxilla utrinque 7, horum duobus seu 3; bus prioribus simpliciusculis, acutis, interioribus seu poster. 2 seu 3; bus furcatis, cuspidate extimo majore. This animal may therefore for the future be called *Sorex aureus, cauda nulla, rostro nudo brevi, palmis sub 4 dactylis, plantis 5 dactylis*. I say *sub-tetra-dactylis*, as this creature has, on the outside of its three crooked claws which stand behind each other, a very small spur, or shorter kind of claw projecting, which the naturalists above-mentioned did not observe, and which might easily induce them

1776.  
January.

them very improperly to augment the catalogue of the animal creation with one animal more than really exists in it.

This creature is five or six inches in length, its snout is short and without any hair upon it, notwithstanding which the upper lip is hairy. The colour, which in other respects is exceedingly beautiful, is continually varying, as SCHREBER has remarked, page 563, between green, brown, and gold. In PETER BROWN'S Illustrations of Zoology, page 110. Plate XLV. there is a tolerable coloured drawing of this animal; the cast, however, of this colour bordering upon gold, is not expressed with a sufficient degree of accuracy and beauty; neither is the least notice taken of the fourth small or external claw.

To the query which M. PALLAS (*de Murium Genere*) proposes at page 154, in the notes, I answer, that this creature, in fact, has eyes, but they are so small that they were not easily to be discerned in the animal just after it was shot; and in the specimen I have preserved in spirits, could not be seen at all till I had stripped the skin from off the head. They are placed in the center of a strait line, conceived to be drawn from the nostrils to the ears. Again, these latter are in the same horizontal line with the fauces, the apertures of them being pretty wide externally, but internally almost imperceptible. This creature has no laps to its ears.

It will be most suitable in this place to enumerate and give a farther description of the African *gazels* all together, partly as I have just been describing several other animals, and partly as by following the order of my journal

nal in this particular, I should be liable to make frequent repetitions.

1776.  
January.

The *bartbeest*, of which I have already made frequent mention in the course of this work, (viz. page 129, 131, 270, 345, Vol. I. and page 4, 12, 13, 18, Vol. II.) is the most common of all the larger gazels which are to be met with at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, or indeed in the whole colony, and in all probability in any part of Africa. These animals mostly keep together in herds of different magnitudes, though one does not unfrequently see them wandering about in a solitary state. I have often had occasion to hunt and shoot them, and made the drawing annexed (vide Plate I. of this Vol.) from one that I had just shot. Without wishing in the least to depreciate the labours of others, I find myself necessitated to refer my readers to this, as being the only figure hitherto published, which exhibits the least resemblance of this animal.

The greatest height of this animal, which is from the fore feet to the withers, somewhat exceeds four feet. The horns, (which are common to both sexes,) measured along the exterior curvature, are from six to nine inches long, and of a black colour all over, being of the same nature in general as those of the gazel kind. The colonists make handsome spoons of them, though the gnu's horns are reckoned to have the finest grain, as well as the blackest hue, and likewise to take the best polish. With respect to other particulars, the horns of this animal stand upon a small protuberance of the cranium, with their bases almost quite close together, diverging as they go upwards continually more and more from each other, as far as to one third of their

1776.  
January.

their whole length; when proceeding farther on to two thirds of their whole length, they lean a little inwards or towards each other, at the same time making a bend backwards; so that the uppermost or last division, which is smooth and even, goes backwards very nearly in a horizontal direction, yet so that the tips turn a little downwards. These horns from their bases upwards, as far as to two thirds of their length, are embossed in the form of rings, which are about eighteen in number, and near the bases of the horns are not elevated more than half a line or a line above the surface beneath; but higher up, or near and upon the curvatures of the horns, these rings are not only much larger, viz. from a quarter to half an inch, but likewise seem to be more irregular, some of them forming knobs, while others take a spiral turn. All these rings or elevations are smooth in other respects, but between them there is a number of longitudinal furrows.

The predominant colour in the hartbeest is cinnamon colour, but the forehead is covered with black hairs, which, with a small admixture of brown, lie in a whirl. Two inches below this begins an oblong black spot, which extends quite down to the nostrils; the lower lip also, and the fore part of the shoulders are covered with black hairs, as are likewise the anterior part of the fore legs quite down to the hoofs, these black hairs being at the same time carried round them, and rising behind up to the fetlock-joints. This black colour is dispersed nearly in the same manner on the fore parts of the hind legs, and between the fetlock-joints and the hoofs behind. A good deal of the hindmost part of the haunch is covered with a wide black streak,

freak, which reaches down to the knee, as may be seen in the figure annexed. There are two narrow stripes, which take their rise one behind each ear, and afterwards run together all along the ridge of the neck. From hence a dark brown oval spot extends over the whole ridge of the back, terminating with its broader and obtuser end just above the tail, which is slender, and, at the first glance, has the appearance of an afs's tail. The hairs of this begin high up, being black, and nearly of the nature of bristles, and rather pointing outwards than hanging down; the outermost, which are the longest, being scarcely six inches long. The upper and hind parts of the haunches are of a pale yellow colour, as well as the anterior and upper edge of them, the inside of them, and the belly. The posterior parts of the fore legs are likewise of a somewhat lighter hue than the cinnamon colour above-mentioned, which covers every other part of the animal.

There is a pore one line in diameter, an inch or an inch and a half below and before the internal angle of the eye. From this pore, which is the aperture of a caruncle that lies below, there is secreted a matter almost like ear-wax, which I observed my Hottentots kept in a piece of skin, as a rare and excellent medicine; on the dried skin of the animal, this pore is scarcely to be discerned. This, perhaps, is the reason, that so great and accurate a zoologist as M. PALLAS makes no mention of this pore, as he made his descriptions chiefly from the dried skins of this animal; and as to the live hartbeest which he saw, he could not so easily come at it, so as to take notice of its pore. The rudiments of a beard or whiskers, mentioned by M. PALLAS as being

1776.  
January.

on each side of the black spot on the under lip, may likewise be seen on the skin of the hartbeest which I brought home with me. This animal is described by M. PALLAS, in Fasc. I. p. 12, No. XVI. and Fasc. XII. No. XIII. p. 16 of his *Spicilegia Zoologica*, under the denomination of the *antilope bubalis*; but in the *Systema Natura*, it has been previously taken notice of by the name of *capra dorcas*: wherefore I choose to keep this specific name, for the sake of avoiding confusion; at the same time in conformity to the well-founded opinion of M. PALLAS, referring the *dorcas* to the *antilope* or *gazel* genus. The *bubalis* of the ancients was probably the same animal with our hartbeests, and so is the *vache de Barbarie*, described in the *Mem. pour servir a l'Hist. des Animaux*, Part II. p. 24. The figure given there, Tab. XXXIX. is, it is true, not a perfect likeness of the *antilope dorcas*; but being very indifferent likewise in other respects, may, with some degree of probability, be supposed to represent this animal. The description, however, contained in the following passage, l. c. does not correspond quite so well with the hartbeest's hair, viz. *Poil roux, plus pâle vers la poitrine, que vers la racine, presque de même grosseur vers le point que vers la racine*. It seems to be merely this passage that has occasioned M. BUFFON, Tom. XII. p. 296, under the article *bubal*, to confound the hartbeest with the animal which KOLBE called the elk; though at the same time he evidently gives a different description of the latter, viz. that it is of an ash colour, &c. &c.

The hair of the hartbeest is particularly fine, and about an inch in length, and in other respects resembling that of harts and gazels. The ears are covered with white hair on the inside.

1776.  
January.

inside. This animal has no teeth, excepting in the lower jaw. These are eight in number; those in the middle are the broadest, and they are likewise broader at the top than they are near the base; thus in number, as well as other properties, entirely resembling the teeth of the *gnu*. The legs are rather slender, with small fetlocks and hoofs. M. PENNANT, in his *Synopsis of Quadrupeds*, p. 37, and in his *History of Quadrupeds*, p. 90, calls this beast the *cervine antelope*; and supposes that M. FORSKAL, by the *baker uasch* of the Arabians, which he places among the animals of a genus hitherto undetermined, means this creature. Mr. HOUTTUYN likewise, by the description and miserable drawing he has given us in Vol. III. p. 213, Plate XXIV. probably means the *hartbeest*. One may easily see that this figure has some affinity with the *temamaçama* of SEBA, Vol. I. Tab. XLIII. which is likewise very properly referred to by M. PALLAS for the hartbeest; but I now find that Mr. PENNANT looks upon this to be his Senegal antelope: the description, however, does not seem to agree so well with the figure of *Seba* there referred to, as with M. DE BUFFON's of the *thoba*, Tab. XXXII. fig. 2, to which he refers likewise. The skeleton and cranium given by M. DE BUFFON in Vol. XII. Tab. XXXVII and XXXVIII. under the denomination of those of the *bubal*, belong to the hartbeest; and from hence it appears, that the horns are apt to vary in this animal. May not, therefore, the Senegal and cervine antelopes of Mr. PENNANT be, in fact, one and the same animal? Indeed, though I have found the horns of the hartbeest differ from each other pretty much in their external surface, yet it appeared to me that the position of

1776.  
January.



them was very constant in the very considerable number of them that I have seen in Africa. The head of the figure here annexed, is rather too small in proportion to the body; a mistake which happened, in the reduction of the drawing from a larger to a lesser scale\*.

The large head and high fore-hand, together with the asinine ears and tail of the hartbeest, render it one of the least handsome of the whole tribe of antilopes. Its pace, when at full speed, appears like a heavy gallop; notwithstanding which, it runs as fast as any of the other large antilopes. When it has in the least got a-head of its pursuers, it is more apt than almost any other gazel to turn round frequently while it is flying, and, making a stand, stare them full in the face. I have already made mention, at page 132 of this Volume, of its falling on its knees, like the *gnu*, when it goes to butt any one. The flesh of it is of a fine grain, and rather dry, but yet of a rather agreeable high flavour. It is at least not so coarse and dry as that of the *bunte-bok*. M. DE BUFFON, who, at page 298, seems desirous of separating the hartbeest from the gazel, goat, and all other genera, will, perhaps, now be induced, by what has been just mentioned, to allow that it ought rather to be referred to the gazel or antilope kind.

*Eland*, or *Kaapse Eland*, (the *Cape elk*) vide Plate I. Vol. II. is a name given by the colonists to a species of gazel which is somewhat larger and clumsier, though, upon the whole, handsomer than the *hartbeest*. I have already had occasion in Vol. I. page 131, and Vol. II. page 70, 96, 116, 130, to make

\* This defect is remedied in the present edition.

1776.  
January.

mention of this animal, and have given a description and drawing of it in the Swedish Transactions for 1779. In one of the places above referred to, I have mentioned, that it is called by the Caffres *empofos*; I have since found in my manuscript notes, that it is likewise called by the same nation *poſſo*, and by the Hottentots *t'gann*. There has not been hitherto given any ſatisfactory deſcription or drawing of this rare animal, as before this it had never been ſeen by any naturaliſt.

Mr. PENNANT, in the new edition of his excellent Hiſtory of Quadrupeds, Vol. I. page 70, has perfectly well comprehended my meaning in the Swedish Transactions; but, as well as M. PALLAS, in his *Spicil. Zool. Faſcic. XII. p. 11*, has been led by KOLBE into the error of fixing the habitation of the Cape elk in mountainous tracts; (vide Faſc. I. Plate XVI.) an error, which has occaſioned that great zoologiſt, M. PALLAS, who had before in Faſc. I. l. c. made mention of this animal by the name of *oryx*, to change it for that of *orcaſ*, (vide Faſc. XII. page 5, 11, 17,) and afterwards gave the name of *oryx* to another animal; a circumſtance which it were to be wiſhed could be avoided, on account of the confuſion in which the multitude of names, and more eſpecially the alterations of them, muſt neceſſarily involve the ſcience of natural hiſtory. After all, however, the fact is this, that the elk antelope, like the other large ſpecies of the gazel kind, lives on the plains and in vallies, inſtead of the high mountains, whither KOLBE has ſent it, and up which this animal in particular would in all probability be too heavy and unwieldy to climb. The Comte de BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab.

1776.  
January.

LXVI. p. 378, has delineated the horns extremely well, but has very improperly ascribed them to the *coudou* (Belgis *koedoe*) which is quite a different animal, and of which we shall say more hereafter.

The figure annexed at Plate I. Vol. II. I had an opportunity, in my journey homewards, of drawing from a live elk, which had been caught while it was yet a fawn; but though it was not quite grown up, and though it was permitted to go loose day and night without the least restraint or confinement, yet it never went away, but kept very near to mankind, and about the farm: whence it appears, how easy it would be to domesticate this species of gazel, which, in its tame state, might be more serviceable than either horses or oxen, and, in a great measure, perform the offices for which both these animals are used; especially as this beast is said to keep up its flesh without taking much food, for the most part contenting itself with shrubs and bushes, which the land is more inclined to produce than grass. It appeared to me, that the hair in the fore-top and on the forehead was longer in this than in the three old ones which I saw shot; on the other hand, this wanted the small elevation, or knob, which the others, and particularly one of them, had between and behind their horns.

This beast is of an ash-colour, inclining a little towards blue, excepting the following parts, which are quite black, viz. the tuft at the end of the tail, the skin between the fetlocks and the hoofs, and the thin erect mane, which extends from the nape of the animal's neck along the spine of its back.

The

1776.  
January.

The horns of this creature, when it is full grown, are two feet long, and of a dark brown colour, being twisted, or forming a very conspicuous wreath half way up from the base, in which they have three sides and three ridges or ribs, separated by the sides from each other; the horns afterwards become round and straight, excepting that the tips of them are gradually turned a little forwards and inwards. The hindmost ridge near the base becomes, in the middle of the writhen part of the horn, the middlemost ridge, and the most raised; but at its termination again becoming the hindmost, gradually decreases, and vanishes at the back of the upper half of the horn. The interior and anterior edge is the most obtuse of any, and in some is quite rounded off; the exterior and anterior likewise terminates at top, outwards and forwards, somewhat higher than the others. At the bottom of all, near the bases of the horn, there appears several irregular scabrous and oblique rings, which are tolerably well expressed in the figure of the tobacco horn given in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 3; but after this, the fibres of the horn take a spiral form, running over and parallel with the above-described twisted angles and sides of the horn, though in several places a half ring or scabrous inequality going across them is discoverable. The forehead of this animal is flat, and tolerably broad at top, in proportion to what it is lower down about the eyes, where it becomes very narrow. It has a foretop standing erect, the length of its whole forehead. Its nose is sharp and pointed. Its breast is covered with a *paleare*, or loose skin, with long hair.

This animal has a great deal of fat, especially about the heart: from an old male which we gave chase to and shot,

1776.  
January.

we got such a quantity of fine and tender fat, as we could with difficulty get into a box that would hold about ten pounds of butter. As at the commencement of our journey homewards through the desert, the hounds we had with us had unluckily devoured our stock of butter, a farmer, who still accompanied us, shewed us how to prepare the fat from about the heart of the elk, and to use it for dressing victuals with, and for eating on bread in the same manner as is generally practised with goose-grease and hogs-lard. The taste of it also was very similar to these, and to the full as good; and, indeed, if I may be supposed to have been able to form any judgment of the matter at a time when we were so sharp set, and in absolute want of any thing else of the kind, it was rather better. The breast is likewise extremely fat, and is always looked upon as a great delicacy. The flesh is universally of a finer grain, more juicy and better tasted than that of the *hart-beest*. When the elk-antilopes are hunted, they always run, if possible, against the wind, even though the hunter himself should come from that side, and attempt to drive them back. I have myself seen a most evident instance of this, when on a hunting party with three others. In fact, it is supposed, that being very fat and purfy, they find it easier to fetch their breath when they run against the wind. They mostly keep together in large herds, and were supposed to migrate now and then to the southward, like the springboks, when any great drought, or failure with respect to rain and water, happens in the interior or northern parts of Africa. Just before our departure from *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, some Hottentots arrived there with the news, that they

1776.  
January.

they had seen, between the two *Vifch-riviers*, an infinite number of elks, which just at that place turned back again and made towards the north. This piece of intelligence was in probability very true; for on our return homewards, we found several spots, which before were green and covered with herbage, grazed off quite bare, and almost as much beaten and trampled under foot, as a place of encampment for cavalry. It was imagined, that such large herds as these, either would not deign to make way for any huntsmen on horseback, or else that the foremost of them could not avoid making some resistance, on account of those in the rear pressing upon them. If this were the case, it would have been a great misfortune for our small party to have met with this army of quadrupeds, as they would, in all probability, have jumped over our heads and trod us under foot, in case we had not had time or room enough to have got on one side out of their way. The male elks, which are rather aged, and consequently slow and tardy, keep apart from the rest of the herd; and are generally so fat and heavy, as, in case of being chased, to tire immediately on the first onset. And indeed, of the elk species, the males are always the fattest and largest in the herd, and have evidently a fuller neck than the others; it is likewise these, that the hunter singles out and is sure to come up with first. I have been assured by several people, that some of the younger and fleetest, but at the same time fatter sort of bucks, will sometimes, when they are hard run, drop down dead during the chase; and that melted fat, as it were, together with the blood, would at that time gush out of their nostrils.

1776.  
January.

Being on a hunting-party on our way home, and observing a young buck of the elk-antelope species, a farmer who was along with us, sent off his son, a lad about twenty years old, as being the lightest, as well as the best mounted of us all, to give chase to it; and by so doing, procured me likewise no small degree of pleasure, as long as I could get to view the chase, which was for the space of more than a quarter of an hour. In consequence of their distance from me, and the great rate at which they went, the legs of the horse, as well as those of the elk, being scarcely perceptible, both the sportsman and his game seemed to swim, or sail, as it were, over the hills and plains, while they were mutually endeavouring to get to the windward of each other. In fact, the young huntsman had more than once the advantage in this point; but in order to prolong the pleasure of the chase, and buoyed up by the ambitious hopes of being able to tire out his game, and afterwards drive it back to us, he purposely neglected several opportunities that offered of jumping off his horse, (as the sportsmen here are used to do) and shooting the flying foe. Besides, the air was now tolerably calm; and in this case, the animal in general does not strive so pertinaciously to get to the windward of its pursuers, as at other times; so that there have been instances known of spirited and expert sportsmen who, to their singular satisfaction, as well as for the sake of greater convenience, have hunted elks and other gazels, and driven them back, for many miles together, from the open plains, on to their own doors, before they have thought it worth while to fire their pieces at them. But to return to our sportsman; in the space of about two hours he comes back,

1776.  
January.

wearied and confused, and pleading in his excuse that, having fired at the beast and wounded it, though not mortally, it had escaped into a close thicket, while he was occupied in adjusting his saddle, which had got loose; together with other excuses of that nature. He likewise added, that while he was chasing the animal, he could plainly perceive a bloody froth exuding from its neck, along with the white foam which appears on most animals on their being hard run. This exudation, or sweating of blood, does not appear to me in the least improbable; however, I will not by any means pledge myself for the truth of it; as, being so very unusual a circumstance, it must have been seen at a smaller distance, and confirmed by the testimony of several, before it could be thought credible. Every body, however, in this country was firmly of opinion, (and, as it appears to me, not without reason) that although game of this kind, and hunted almost as hard as this, might escape for the present, they would however soon after grow stiff in their joints and die; or at least be so disabled, that the next time they were chased either by sportsmen or wild beasts, they would the easier become a prey to them. The case is quite otherwise with horses, which are prevented by their masters from drinking, or from being otherwise cooled too soon, when they are warm. Nevertheless, almost all horses which have been much used in hunting, are pretty much spavined, and sometimes are very stiff in their joints, and slow in their paces, till, previously to their being taken out a hunting again, they have been rode out a little, and their limbs, by this means, rendered pliable. One of our company had a large horse, but as thin as a grey-hound, which

1776.  
January.

was very much foundered. This horse, however, when it had got warm, was one of the swiftest I ever set eyes on.

Neither are these hunting-parties without their difficulties, and even danger for the hunters themselves; as besides that they cannot help sometimes being carried by their horses through coppices and thickets, (in which case their legs are scratched, and the skirts of their coats torn by the bushes) and are obliged to leap over pits and rivulets, neither can they entirely avoid sinking now and then into the holes and subterraneous passages, which are dug in the earth by the various kinds of animals I have described above. In chasing the elk-antelope near little *Fish* river in our way home on the first of February, I had the misfortune to have my horse, which was galloping full speed, sink into the ground with his fore feet; in consequence of which he, as it appeared to me and my companions in the chase, tumbled over head and heel, (*gat over de kop.*) I myself was thrown, with my gun in my hand, to a great distance from him, and was particularly hurt in both my wrists, of which I had not the perfect use for a long time. The gun, though it was cocked, did not go off in the fall. As soon as my horse came up, he galloped home again to our waggons, which were in sight, so that I had the additional mortification of being obliged to return on foot; a circumstance, which, in the case of hunting the buffalo or the lion, might have been attended with still worse consequences. My companions were so eager and intent on the chase, that they all rode on without giving themselves the trouble to see whether I wanted any help or no.

The

The *elk-antilopes*, however, are none of them so fleet as the *hartbeests*; the hide likewise of the neck, particularly of that of the male, is thicker and tougher than either the hide of this latter or that of the common ox; and is looked upon, next to the buffalo's hide, to be the fittest for halters for oxen, traces for waggons, field-shoes, and such like uses. The female has horns, like the male, but smaller; though they, as well as those of the male, are used by the Hot-tentots, both men and women, for tobacco-pipes, in the manner I have before mentioned at page 230, Vol. I. (see likewise Plate I. fig. 3. of the same volume.) There is no porus sebaceous, or ceriferus, at the corner of the eye of this animal, as there is in the eye of the *gnu* and of the *hartbeest*. I observed a very singular circumstance in the last elk we shot, which was, that on each side of its eight front teeth, there was a cartilaginous process exactly resembling a tusk. These processes were somewhat flexible and elastic; in fact, they did not seem at all adapted to mastication, so that it was difficult to conjecture for what purpose they were intended by nature. In the live young elk that I made a drawing of, it did not once enter into my thoughts to examine how things were situated with respect to this process.

*Koedoe* is the name given by the colonists to a beautiful tall *gazel* with long and slender shanks, which is larger, though much less clumsy and heavy, than the *elk-antilope*. The horns too of the *koedoe*, besides that the spiral twist on them is more deeply embossed, and is embellished with a singularly prominent edge, or rib, are twice as long as the horns of the elk. M. DE BUFFON, who has seen the horns  
only

1776.  
January.



1776.  
January.

only of both these animals, has, as I have already mentioned, miscalled the *Cape-elk* by the name of *coudou*; which however properly belongs to the animal I am now describing, whose name he has, instead of this, distorted to *condoma*; a circumstance which probably proceeded from the letter to which M. BUFFON refers, having been ill written, or else from his having made a mistake in reading it; so that either in one case or the other, they turned the letter *u* in *coudou* topsy turvy, and made an *n* of it. He was obliged to alter the termination also, otherwise we should have had two very different animals with the same name. By this means, likewise, the *elk-antilope* ran the risk of wearing the long stately horns of the *koedoe*.

Neither has M. HOUTTUYN been more fortunate in his *Natuurlyke Historie*, Vol. III. p. 267, in which he classes them with the sheep. Excepting the horns, the whole of the figure he has given in Tab. XXVI. l. c. is good for nothing. Our great countryman LINNÆUS has been so far misled, as to refer to it in his *System of Nature* for the figure of the *ovis strepsiceros*; though the body they have put to the horns (which, however, never belonged to it) is certainly not like that of a sheep. A better figure is given in the *Nouv. Descrip. du Cap de B. Esperance*, page 41, 42, the author of which assures us, that it was taken from the life. In the mean time I must confess, that I had no cognizance whatever of the beard: I will not venture, however, to dispute the point very tenaciously, as I saw these animals alive but twice in the course of my hunting expeditions, though, indeed, that was at no great distance. M. PALLAS, who had examined the head of a *koedoe*, re-  
marks

1776.  
January.

marks in Spic. I. p. 1—17, that the *koedoe* has no beard, and therefore cannot be the *capra anonyma* of KOLBE. Mr. PENNANT, who in his *History of Quadrupeds*, Vol. I. p. 77, has accurately described the *koedoe* under the name of the *striped antelope* from several skins of this animal, and who refers to the above-mentioned figure in the *Nouv. Descript. du Cap*, as being a good one, is quite silent with respect to the beard. I have some time before asserted in the Swedish Transactions for 1779, p. 157, that the male of the *koedoe* had no horns; a circumstance which had not been remarked before by any zoologist, and which I would wish to confirm in this place; with the additional remark, that the *porus ceriferus*, which in a number of *gazels* is placed below the eye, is wanting in the *koedoe*. Concerning this point I assured myself, by inspecting the body of a fawn of one of the animals immediately after it was shot.

The predominant colour in this fawn's skin, which I brought home with me, is a rusty brown; the ridge of the back is likewise partly inclined to brown and partly to white; but the stripes which go from it downwards, to the number of eight or nine, are white; the hind part of the belly is of a white colour, which extends straight downwards on the fore part of the hind legs in the form of a white list, terminating a hand's breadth above the hoofs; but directly above them on all the four feet there is a white spot, composed, as it were, of two; the fetlock-joints are extremely small, and the part below each of them is of a brown colour. On the breast again, there are likewise some dark brown marks. The forehead and the fore part of the nose are brown,  
the

1776.  
January.

the lower lip is white, and there is some white on the upper lip, on the knees, and on each side of the fore legs; a white stripe half an inch long runs forward from the internal angle of each eye, and these stripes almost meet together just above the nose; upon each of the cheek-bones there are two small white spots; the inner edges of the ears are covered with white hairs, and the upper part of the neck is adorned with a brown mane an inch long.

From the tall and slender form of the *koedoe*, I had conceived it to be a very swift-footed animal; but I have been assured by two colonists, that in this respect it is not only very moderate, but likewise soon tires; so that it is more easily overtaken by the hounds than any other *gazel*: on the other hand, the males with their long horns defend themselves with great spirit against their foe, when he comes to close quarters with them. I cannot by any means suppose, that the large horns of the male are the cause of its running so slowly; for the female, which is free from this burthen, is not looked upon to be swifter of foot than the male: so that I cannot conceive the reason, why nature has denied her the power of extricating herself from danger, both by means of her head and of her feet.

On the 29th of January, being on our way homewards, we came very close upon seven or eight *koedoes*, one of which, not placing any dependence on its legs, fled for refuge into the river, where it got entangled in the weeds and grass that floated on the surface, and was seized and worried to death by our hounds. Afterwards two of our Hottentots swam to it, and cut off several slices from it. I found the flesh much of the same nature with that of the *hartbeest*,

1776.  
January.

*hartbeest*, but the marrow was, at least in my opinion, extremely delicious. The *koedoe* is said to live more on shrubs and bushes, than any of the other gazels I have before mentioned. A sportsman, in whose presence I was making mention of the cartilages of the elk-antelope which resemble tusks, informed me, that the *koedoe* had processes exactly of the same kind.

Another of the larger kind of *gazel* at the Cape, is known by the name of *gemse-bok*, or *chamois*. How improper an appellation this is in many respects Dr. FORSTER has already taken notice, in his *Voyage round the World*, Vol. I. page 84. The horns are very well delineated in BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. XXXIII. Fig. 3. and there is a beautiful figure of the whole animal in the *Nouv. Descript.* page 56, where the name of *pasan*, which had been given it by M. DE BUFFON, is retained. M. PALLAS, who, in his *Spic. Zool. Fasc. I. pag. 14.* hath called it the *antelope bezoartica*, has thought proper to alter the name in his *Fasc. XII. page 16 and 17*, to that of *antelope oryx*. Mr. PENNANT has described this *gazel* under the denomination of *Egyptian*, vide his *Synopsis of Quadrupeds*, page 25; and his *Hist. of Quadrupeds*, p. 67. M. HOUTTUYN likewise by his Fig. 1. Tab. XXIV. which LINNÆUS refers to for his *capra gazella*, probably meant the *Cape chamois*. In all probability, this animal is peculiar to the north-western part of the colony; for in the tracts of country I travelled through, I neither saw nor heard any thing of it. At Cape Town, however, the horns are not very scarce. I have one under my care in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, which is of a blackish colour, about three feet long, and almost

1776.  
January.

perfectly strait, the lower half of it at the same time being distinguished by twenty or more craggy wavy rings projecting above the surface. The upper half is smooth, and goes off tapering by degrees to a sharp point, the diameter of the base being about an inch and a half. In other respects, this creature is described both by Mr. PENNANT, and in the above-mentioned compilation, as being of an ash colour somewhat inclining to red; the belly, legs, and face are white; but the spaces just before and round about the horn, together with the fore part of the upper extremity of the nose, and the lower part of the forehead, are black, or black bordering upon brown; there also goes from the eyes to the chin a brownish black stripe, which is connected by another of the same kind with the above-mentioned spot on the nose and forehead. This animal is likewise said to be of a dark colour on the shoulders, a little on the fore part of the legs, on those parts where the belly terminates in the sides, on the tail itself, and all along the back and the neck. The tail seems to reach to the hocks, and the hoofs appear to be of an uncommon length; so, at least, they are represented in the figures alluded to above.

KOLBE's description of his elk (called the *elend-thier* in the German edition, p. 145,) answers better in some sort to this *gazel* than to that which is actually known at the Cape by this name, and of which I have given a description; but whichever of these two it is that KOLBE means, his description is faulty at all events, and the weight he mentions, viz. 400 lb. is under the real weight of the animal. But be that as it will, there is the most manifest

manifest absurdity in KOLBE's assertion, that an animal of such a weight as this should be caught in a springe with a small cord, and drawn up into the air.

1776.  
January.

The *blaauw-bok* is also one of the large species of *gazel*, which, probably, are only to be found in the same district with the *gazel* just described; excepting, perhaps, a single one, which may happen now and then by great chance to stray from these parts: for at *Krakeel-rivier*, I found they had preserved a skin of this animal. The colour of this creature when alive is said to resemble that of blue velvet, but when it is dead it is of a lead colour. There is a beautiful figure of it by the name of the *Tzeiran*, to be seen at p. 58 of the compilation I have frequently referred to. On this subject the reader may likewise turn to Mr. PENNANT's *blue antilope*, and M. PALLAS's *antilope leucophaea*; being thus called by the latter gentleman, from the circumstance of its being marked with a large white spot just before and beneath each eye. The hairs on the belly are long and white; the tail is short; the horns go backwards with a curve, being decorated with about twenty-four rings to three-fourths of their height; but the uppermost quarter is smooth, and goes off tapering by degrees to a point.

The *bunte-bok*, (the painted or pied goat) called by Mr. PENNANT the *harnessed antilope*, and by M. PALLAS *antilope scripta*, I have already mentioned in Vol. I. page 129, as being somewhat less than the *hartbeest*; and again at page 277, as being larger than the *bosch-bok*. The *bunte-bok* is not to be found any farther to the eastward of the Cape than *Zwellendam*; but a farmer who had been in the country of *Tambuki* informed me, that he had there again

1776.  
January.

seen *bunte-boks*, though somewhat different from the above-mentioned.

The *gnu*, which I have described above at pages 132, 152, and 175, and have given the figure of in Plate II. of this volume, I reckon, with still greater confidence than I did before, among the large gazels of Africa; since induced by the arguments I have made use of to this purpose in the Swedish Transactions, the great English PLINY, whose admirable History of Quadrupeds I have so often quoted in these sheets, has likewise thought proper to refer the *gnu* to the *gazel* kind.

To the smaller African *gazels*, (which, indeed, has been already treated of) having no porus ceriferus underneath the eye, belong the following:

The *bosc-bok*, or *antilope sylvatica, cornibus erectis subtriquetris spiralibus, corpore fusco, albo maculato, cauda brevissima*. This animal I have already spoken of at page 270, Vol. I. and have given the figure of it in Plate VI. of this volume. As the specific difference of the other *gazels* which are better known than this in the respective descriptions of each of them, or may be found in some of the authors there quoted, I choose to omit the insertion of them here, in order to avoid prolixity; particularly as it would be of no service, excepting with respect to the making out of the nomenclature of the whole genus.

The *spring-bok*, or the bounding goat, (vide page 83 to page 90, and Plate V. of this volume) is called by M. PALLAS, in his Fasc. XII. page 15, the *antilope pygargus*.

Besides the *gazels* above-mentioned, there are several others of which I am not able to give the zoologists so good

an account as they may require of me. I conceive, nevertheless, that the enumerating of them here will not be wholly useless, as by this means the attention of naturalists and travellers may be turned to them in a particular manner, so that some light may at length be thrown on this principal branch of zoology, which has been hitherto so much involved in darkness. These animals are the following :

1776.  
January.

The *ree-bok* is a gregarious animal, two feet in height. The predominant colour of it is an ash-colour, somewhat resembling that of a hare, but a little inclining to red; the belly and anus are white, as well as the under part of the tail, which is very short; the horns are black, quite straight, and in position, form and substance, very like those of the *gemse bok*, but are barely a foot long, and proportionally very small, consequently very taper at the end and sharp-pointed; for which reason the Hottentots frequently keep them by them, and use them as awls or bodkins for the purpose of boring holes, when they make or repair their shoes or cloaks. The hair likewise of this creature seems to be softer and finer than common. The flesh of it is dry, and is accounted worse than that of any other gazel.

This animal was not uncommon in *Hottentots Holland*, *Artaquas-kloof*, and *Lange-kloof*. I must own, however, that I have drawn up the account I have just given of this animal, from memory only, as I had the misfortune to lose the original description, together with the drawing. In a journey like mine, losses of this kind are not to be wondered at. At times, when I was wet through with heavy showers of rain, or in consequence of having forded a river,

1776.  
January.

ver, a paper or two that I had about me, must necessarily have been in the same predicament. The overturning of our waggon likewise, especially at night, which happened at two different times, was of no great service to my collections, particularly to my insects.

The *riet*, or reed *ree-bok*, I saw but once, and then I had but a hasty glimpse of it, as it ran by me. This was during my residence at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, and it was there only that I heard any mention of this creature. It generally keeps concealed among the reeds and marshy places, and is thought to resemble a little the animal last described, from which two circumstances it has obtained the name it bears. It is, however, twice as big as the *ree-bok*; they are monogamous, or keep only in pairs, and, if I remember right, the females are said to be without horns.

Notwithstanding all the presents and offers I have made to my correspondents at the Cape, they have not yet fulfilled their promises of sending me the skins of these two animals, which are probably a species of the *capra* or GAZEL genus, hitherto entirely unknown.

The *vlaksteen-bok* was the name given at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte* to animals (probably of the gazel kind) two feet in height, which used, in some sort, to herd together on the *vlaktens*, or plains, though for the most part dispersed and at a distance from each other. I likewise saw this creature twice on my journey homeward through the desert. Though, when at a certain distance, it did not appear in the least shy, it always took care, however, not to let any of us come within gun-shot of it. It must consequently  
be

1776.  
January.

be hunted down on horseback, except the ground is too stoney and rough. The colour of it was a very pale-red or a mouse-colour, (*colore murino*) on which account it was likewise said to be called by some the *bleek-bok*, or *vaal ree-bok*. It is more clumsy and unwieldy than the *ree-bok*, and in its form more resembles the animal commonly called the *steen-bok* at the Cape.

The animals called by the colonists *steen-bok*, *grys-bok*, *duyker-bok*, and *klipspringer*, are about two feet high, being probably of the *gazel* kind, and are not uncommon near the Cape. But for this very reason, and in consequence of my having been frequently impeded by my botanical researches, I deferred the investigation of these animals till it was too late, as my departure for Europe took place much sooner than I expected. It is some consolation to me, however, to reflect, that this loss may easily be repaired; and, indeed, more than repaired, by somebody else: perhaps we may expect that favour from Messrs. FORSTERS, who, when at the Cape, were engaged in making drawings, together with accurate descriptions of these quadrupeds; for which reason likewise, I even then considered my researches into this matter as being the more superfluous. In the mean time, however, I must observe, that I am perfectly convinced that these animals are of species distinct from each other, the females of which have no horns; and, if I remember right, they have all a porous ceriferous below the eye, except, according to what I was told, the *duyker-bok*. The flesh too of this last animal was also said to be very dry and tough, when compared with that of the others, which I tasted of, and which appeared to me, with respect  
to

1776.  
January.

to the high flavour and dryness of the meat, to bear some resemblance to the flesh of the hare.

The *steen-bok* is of a reddish colour, with a white spot over its eyes, and is probably a variety of Mr. PENNANT'S red antelope. Hist. of Quadrupeds, page 76.

The *grys-bok* is of a greyish colour, with black ears, and a large black spot round the eyes, being probably the *A. Grimmia*. Spicil. Zool. I. p. 8. Tab. III.

The *klipspringer* is of a light red colour, inclining to yellow, and intermixed with black streaks; the tips and edges of its ears are black. The tails of these animals were very short; the horns of all the males, if I remember right, are rather shorter than their ears, being in some measure straight, and at the same time round, smooth, sharp-pointed, black, and standing at a great distance from each other, though probably they vary in their position. The *klipspringer* has obtained the name it bears, from the circumstance of its running with the greatest velocity, and making large bounds even on the steepest precipices and in the most rocky places; so that, like the other two, it cannot be easily caught with hounds. In this respect it resembles Mr. PENNANT'S *swift antelope*, l. c. As for the *duyker-bok*, or diving goat, I have only had a single glimpse of it. The colour of it seemed to be dark brown, and its manner of running in the highest degree singular; as the animal would make a bound at intervals, rising in its leap with its neck erect, and in its descent bringing it down between its legs, and then continuing its course on the ground. This, perhaps, among the bushes, had the appearance of diving, and gave rise to its name.

Apes,

1776.  
January.

*Apes, or baboons,* reside in considerable numbers in the woody part of the mountain, at the foot of which runs little *Vifch-rivier*. They are said to have long canine teeth or tusks, and to be very swift of foot, nimble, strong, and difficult to kill, so that they will sometimes even force the tigers to quit their hold, and part with their lives to the hounds at a dear rate. On this account the colonists are not very fond of hunting them. One day, however, when several baboons made their appearance very near the farm where we were lodged, I persuaded my host to set his dogs upon them. One of these baboons, which seemed rather in years and inactive, and perhaps was not able to reach the mountains so soon as the rest, took refuge in a low tree down in the plain. My piece was at this time loaded with what they call *steen-bok* shot, or shot about the size of a common pea; and with these, at the distance of fifteen paces only, I hit the animal in the left breast; notwithstanding which, the creature, though mortally wounded, was able to stay in the tree several minutes, and during that time did not utter the least cry or groan. At last, when it was obliged to quit its hold on the tree, the dogs fell upon it before it came to the ground. I now found that there was very good foundation for what I had been formerly told, viz. that there was no species of hunting in which the dogs shew so much fury and malice as in the chase of monkeys or baboons; ours having wounded the animal in a most terrible manner, before they could be made to quit it. The head of this creature very much resembled that of a dog, and its tusks were about half an inch long; the colour of the hair was a yellowish brown;

1776.  
January.

the tail was nearly as long as the body, and was terminated by a tuft of hair, so that in this respect it resembled the tail of the lion. The whole length of the animal from head to foot was five feet; its colour was the common baboon colour, or a mixture of yellow and brown. It is probable, that this baboon is the *simia cynocephalus* of the *Systema Naturæ*; though the *cauda floccosa* of this animal is not taken notice of in the *differentia specifica*, as the tails of such monkeys as are kept in a state of confinement are usually cut short by their keepers. In the course of my journey I accidentally saw a young baboon or two with cropped tails, which were kept chained up, and were said to be natives of the Cape colonies; but they had not a dog's nose and large tusks like this, so that they probably formed a distinct species; neither had they such a dark colour as Mr. PENNANT describes in his *ursine baboon*, which he supposes came from the Cape. The skin of the monkey I had shot, had been too ill used by the dogs to be worth preserving; but curious to know, what this animal, in so many respects resembling the human race, fed upon in his wild state, I opened his stomach, and found it filled with a substance like spinach, cut small and stewed: this animal, in all probability, eats likewise certain bulbs and roots, like the *Boshies-men*; though at that time at least, its diet did not appear to consist of a mixture of different substances, neither fruit nor berries of any sort being to be found in these parts, at least not in that quantity as to deserve to be ranked among the articles on which these animals subsisted. They were not in the least suspected of living upon animal food; besides, it is well known, that many sorts of monkeys,

1776.  
January.

kies, when in a state of confinement, are fed only with vegetables, and upon such food are brisk and lively; for which reason, as one can scarcely entertain so ill an opinion of M. DE BUFFON, considering him as a naturalist and author of a considerable number of large volumes on the subject of zoology, as to suppose him ignorant of the circumstance of most of the monkey tribe observing in general a vegetable diet, or of the great resemblance between the viscera of these creatures and those of man; for this reason I say, it is difficult to conceive, what could induce this celebrated author to assert, that animals which have only one stomach and short intestines, are obliged, like man, to feed upon flesh? *Les animaux qui n'ont qu'un estomac, et les intestins courts, sont forcés, comme l'homme, à se nourrir de chair.* (BUFFON, Tom. VII. p. 36.)

In fact, must it not likewise inevitably follow from this position, that the rhinoceros and horse, which, in like manner, have one stomach, with intestines very short in proportion, should be obliged, like man, to live upon flesh? M. DE BUFFON, indeed, in order farther to enforce his opinion, advises us, l. c. to compare the bowels of animals with each other: but to say the truth, it is, very unfortunately for him, precisely this comparison, which when made between man, the ape, the rhinoceros, and the horse; or again, between the diminutive fructivorous ape, *saimiri*, Tom. XV. and those carnivorous animals the *couguas* and *lynx*, Tom. IX. or the wolf, Tom. VII. militates against him. We likewise find this learned author, who is himself, perhaps, fonder of animal than of vegetable food, at page 32 and the following pages of Tom. VII. urging in

1776.  
January.

the strongest manner the indispenfible necessity that mankind is under of taking animal food; and in one place he breaks out in this manner, "*Were man reduced to the necessity of living on bread and vegetables alone, he would scarcely be able to support life in a weak and languishing condition.*" From assertions like these one is almost induced to suspect, that this ample and voluminous historian of the animal kingdom, has acquired but a slight and superficial knowledge of the human race; and that, preferring eloquence and paradox to solid argument, he is at any time more likely to adopt falshood and error, than to arrive at truth: for, allowing that the *Bramins*, who live without animal food, are rather, as M. DE BUFFON will have it, a particular sect than a peculiar race of people, still, however, they are men, who live and propagate their species, and are certainly by no means in a weakly and debilitated state. I have been told, that a great part of the poor in China subsist, and that tolerably well, upon rice alone. The lower class of inhabitants in the South-Sea, (the *Tataius*) and even those of the higher classes, used to beg meat of us, as it was a great rarity with them; and though many of these could very seldom get at any fish, and even that but in small quantities, they nevertheless throve very well on this chiefly vegetable diet, and were so stout and robust as, not to mention other proofs of their strength, for the sake of a glass bead or a nail, frequently to dispute with each other which of them should carry some of us carnivorous Europeans on their backs over places, which we could not have otherwise passed without being wet-shod. This office they performed so well, as never once to stumble in pretty rapid streams

1776.  
January.

streams with rough gravelly bottoms, though at the same time the water reached up to their middles, and we fate astride upon their shoulders with our guns in our hands. The wretched island, called *Easter Island*, is a very convincing proof, that human nature can accustom itself to be content with very little nourishment; for though we walked quite across the island, and explored a considerable part of it, we could see no more than one little boat, which, by the by too, was very much patched up and cobbled; neither could we find timber enough to make another like it; so that I do not know what could induce Capt. COOK to affirm that they had three or four boats. Neither did we observe any kind of fishing-tackle in the least, nor any signs, that the inhabitants were used to get their food from the sea or its shore. They had, indeed, some cocks and hens, but as these were but small and very tame, and at the same time so far from being numerous, that we scarcely saw fifty of them in a place containing seven or eight hundred people, we may with great propriety assert, that there were many persons in this island who subsisted almost, if not quite, without animal food of any kind whatsoever. There were some roots there, it is true; but as these were not extremely plentiful, and are held in abhorrence in the other islands, I do not know, whether the reasons given by Capt. COOK are sufficient to induce one to suppose, that the inhabitants of this island used them as food; and in case they did, they would seldom be able to make a good meal of them. It is true, that these people were almost all of them lank and lean; but then it must be considered likewise, that there was also a very great scarcity of vegetables;

1776.  
January.

tables; as the vegetable produce of the whole country hardly consisted of twenty plants, among which the pifang, yams, sweet potatoes, and the sugar cane, were the chief articles which it appeared to me they could make use of. On the other hand, these people were agile, and as swift as goats, and seemed to be very healthy. Their strength was not put to the trial; but that their vegetable food did not make them tardy in the performance of the Cyprian rites, an effect which M. DE BUFFON, at page 33, seems willing to attribute to it, the reader may be easily convinced by perusing Dr. FORSTER'S description of the Messalina-like temperament of the women. One of these, who had swam to our ship, when it was at a great distance from the shore, was said, within the space of a few hours, to have suffered the embraces of seventeen of our sailors and marines, before she swam again to land.

By way of farther refuting M. DE BUFFON'S assertion with respect to the indispensable necessity of an animal diet, that in the Society Islands the inhabitants had no great superfluity of meat for themselves, much less had they any fish or flesh to bestow on their dogs; so that these creatures, which, according to M. DE BUFFON, particularly came under the denomination of carnivorous animals, might very properly be said to be fed almost, if not entirely, on vegetable food alone. I had no reason, however, to look upon them as being feeble and weak; though, on the other hand, the roasted ones which now and then appeared at our table, as well as at those of the principal inhabitants, were convincing proofs of their being fat and in good condition. Moreover, since our hounds in Europe, which certainly

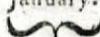
1776.  
January.

certainly belong more properly than man to the class of carnivorous animals, are often nourished for a long time together extremely well with nothing else but flour and water, why should not several sorts of vegetables suffice for mankind? The slaves and the Boshies-men at the Cape, who are engaged in the service of such farmers as do nothing but graze sheep, and consequently have little or no butter-milk, and at the same time live in parts where the game has been previously destroyed, are yet kept by their masters in good condition, almost entirely with bread and other preparations of meal and flour; for they are very careful not to lavish their sheep on their slaves, these sheep being very frequently the only articles by which they can get a little ready cash and pay their taxes. In THOMAS GAGE'S voyage to New Spain we find, that the poor lived on *maiz* and a sort of *phaseolus*, or kidney-bean; though those which live nearer the town, now and then, at least on Sundays, got a little meat.

In ULLOA'S Voyage, Tom. I. p. 248, 249, we read as follows: "The poor people here have nothing to live upon but *papas*; these roots stand them in the stead of all other nourishment. The Creoles prefer them to fowls and the finest flesh meats." Who is there that does not know, how great a part cacao beans make of the food of the inhabitants in the country where they grow; and how soon people of wasted and reduced constitutions, by means of them, recover their flesh and strength? Nay, we have an instance of a ship's crew, which for two months had nothing but chocolate for their food, and were very hearty and well with it.

Now,

1776.  
January.



Now, notwithstanding that there are many families in Upper Egypt which live entirely upon dates, (vide HASSELLQUIST, p. 501) not to mention several other similar instances, yet I will not look upon them as absolutely conclusive with respect to M. DE BUFFON himself; as this author, at page 33, l. c. advances, that abstinence from animal food would destroy the human race; or, at least in our climate, would render it unfit for the propagation of its species, farther says, "It is possible, indeed, that a vegetable diet may be practicable in the southern countries, where the fruits are riper, the herbs have more substance in them, the roots are more succulent, and the seeds contain more nourishment." Setting aside this gentleman's *may be*, I rather choose, by instances brought from Europe and our own climate, fully to refute his delusive doctrines with respect to the absolute necessity of an animal diet. I cannot, however, help remarking, *en passant*, in contradiction to this author, that he has the less reason to consider a vegetable diet as making a man unfit for propagation, as the vegetable kingdom produces the greatest quantity of substances which promote venery. Besides a great many plants belonging to the class *gynandria*, together with several others which might be enumerated, we have chocolate and salep, which are known even by the more ignorant part of mankind to be possessed of *aphrodisiac* qualities: peas likewise, turnips, cabbage, and other flatulent vegetables, are looked upon as possessing these virtues in some degree, and that not without foundation nor unwarranted by experience. This *philosopher*, indeed, who is so much prejudiced against vegetable diet, might have learned  
even

1776.  
January.

even from the most illiterate, that certain vegetables exalted by fermentation, as in the case of good wine and ale, in proper doses, augment, in this particular, the inclination as well as the faculty. As to the greater degree of perfection ascribed by M. DE BUFFON to the plants of the southern countries, in comparison with those which grow in Europe, it is repugnant to all probability, as well as to what we know for certain of the œconomy of nature, which brings to as great perfection the root, stem, leaves, and seed of a plant she had intended for the Alps, as of one which she has planted under the line itself.

One cannot in particular help wondering the more, that M. DE BUFFON should take it into his head, that the plants which grow in the southern climates, have more substance in them than those of France; as, according to the testimony of OLAFSON and several others, a bushel of the *lichen Islandicus*, or Iceland moss, a plant produced in the most northern part of Europe, is adequate to two bushels of wheat; and, as M. DE BUFFON likewise supposes, that the roots in the southern countries are more succulent than they are in the north, are we to take it for granted that he did not find the turnips in Burgundy sufficiently juicy?

But the fact is, that as far as a knowledge of physiology and botany, and above all mature reflection, joined with a habit of method and arrangement, are requisite in order to enable a man to form a right judgment concerning the food of animals, this great naturalist has in this place, as well as in many others, happened to enter upon a subject, of which he is entirely ignorant: of this we have sufficient proofs, in the detracting aspersions he has thrown

1776.  
January.

out against LINNÆUS, and his system of botany, although this system has been received by all good naturalists. M. DE BUFFON, therefore, would have done better, had he kept to his usual admeasurements and prolix descriptions of animals, their skins, skeletons, and horns; taking care, however, for the future, to make his observations in a more accurate manner than he has done with respect to the horns of oxen; on the subject of which he has happened very unfortunately to make a capital blunder, as I shall be obliged to shew more at large a little farther on, when I come to treat of the *camelopardalis*.

In the mean while, let us finish the discussion of the question, in how far a man, at least in France or Europe, (*au moins dans ces pays*, vide BUFFON, l. c.) may be supposed to linger on through life in a weak and debilitated state, or to be incapacitated for the propagation of his species, by living on vegetable food, such as is likely to be found in these countries, e. g. potatoes, turnips, turnip-rooted cabbage, carrots, onions, asparagus, scorzonera, skirrets, the lathyrus tuberosus, fallads, and cabbages of all kinds, artichokes, peas, beans, bread, puddings, and all the other various preparations of meal or corn, chefnuts, almonds, apples, pears, and plums of all sorts, melons, pumpkins, cucumbers, olives, oil, figs, grapes, berries of all sorts, wine, beer, &c.

The very mention of these seems to be a sufficient proof of the absurdity of M. DE BUFFON's opinion; but as he possibly will not give up the point without good authority being produced to the contrary, I will first of all refer him to his justly celebrated countryman TOURNEFORT's excellent

1776.  
January.

lent observations in the Levant, viz. that the food of the inhabitants of certain districts in that part of the world consisted almost entirely of bread, figs, and grapes, with sometimes raw cucumbers. Farther, M. DE BUFFON might have learned from LINNÆUS's *Amœnitates Academicæ*, Tom. I. p. 137, that the *athletæ* of former times, whose principal occupation was wrestling and fighting, for which purpose a strengthening diet was doubtless requisite, lived chiefly upon figs before it was the practice to eat flesh. We are likewise told, l. c. that the poor, who were set to watch the fig-trees and vineyards, grew plump and fat in the space of two months by feeding on these fruits, joined to a very small quantity of bread; and that the foxes, which had an opportunity of creeping into places of this kind, usually got so fat upon this diet, as to be used by some people as food.

I have seen a great number of *Dalecarlians*, who wrought for a long time together at a hard and laborious business, subsist almost entirely upon hasty-pudding and beer, without even a morsel of bread; neither was this in the least considered by them as hard fare. I have also met with many poor cottagers in *Up-landia*, who for a long time together even wanted bread, particularly for their children, so that they were obliged to bring them up upon pancakes and frumenty made without milk.

Those who in the above-mentioned province or elsewhere have an opportunity of adding a little milk to their vegetable food, may nevertheless be considered as living nearly on a vegetable diet; as, according to M. GEOFFROI, the constituent parts of milk are almost entirely the same

1776.  
January.

with those of vegetables. According to the accounts given me by the English, many of the poor people in Ireland live on potatoes only, with now and then a little milk; and a person who several years ago resided for a long time in Russia assured me, that the common people in some places there lived entirely upon four-croût and groats; and likewise upon four bread, raw cucumbers, onions, salt, *quafs*, and *tradakna*, a dish consisting of oatmeal dried in the oven, and mixed up with water: so that out of thirty thousand peasants belonging to a certain nobleman who lived on the borders of Muscovy, there were very few who had the opportunity of tasting either flesh or fish four times a year. M. DE BUFFON may see, moreover, in HALLER, Tom. VI. Lib. XIX. a long list of such authors as have produced proofs and instances that mankind in Europe must necessarily be able, and actually are able to go without animal food: and indeed, why should it not be so, as the same glutinous matter which is so peculiarly nourishing in the animal creation, is likewise found in vegetables? especially as, to omit mentioning many other instances, it is well known, that the people who are condemned to work in the galleys, as well as many others, can make shift with a certain portion of bread and water only; and likewise, that the inhabitants of the Apennine Mountains live almost entirely upon chefnuts.

The utility of a diet consisting entirely of vegetables in the hypochondriasis, obstinate gouts, and other stubborn and pertinacious disorders, has, moreover, of late been placed in a very clear light by Dr. W. GRANT, in his *Essay on the Atrabilious Constitution*, p. 399, and seq. in which instances

1776.  
January.

instances are given of its having not only greatly improved the patients' health, and given them fresh strength and vigour, but likewise made them younger than before. In the same book too we are informed, that this diet may be safely had recourse to by persons far advanced in years; and that it needs to be continued for the space of six weeks only, or two years at the farthest.

The *camelopardalis* is, as I have said above at p. 149 of this volume, the tallest of all quadrupeds when measured in front; and though it is only found in those parts of the Cape colonies that lie farthest towards the north-west, merits, however, an accurate description, especially in this place, along with the other animals of Africa. The latest and best accounts concerning the real form and other properties of this beast have been given to the public by the present Commandant at the Cape, Major GORDON, who shot one of these creatures in the district of *Anamaquas*; in consequence of which, the public has been gratified with a very good drawing and description of it by M. ALLAMAND, in his edition of M. DE BUFFON'S History of Animals, Suppl. DE LA GIRAFFE, p. 46. Of this description I shall here present my reader with an abstract.

The height of this animal, when it holds its neck straight and erect, is, from the crown of the head to the ground, fifteen feet two inches; the length of it, from the chest to the anus, five feet seven inches; from the top of the shoulders to the ground about ten feet; but from the loins only eight feet two inches; a difference which proceeds partly from the length of the shoulder-blades, which are two feet long, and partly from a sharp process of the first vertebra

1776.  
January.

vertebra of the back, which projects above a foot beyond the rest. From the breast to the ground it measures five feet and a half; the neck, which is decorated with a mane like that of the zebra, is six feet long, and consequently twice the length of the camel's; the head is above two feet in length, and somewhat resembles the head of a sheep; the upper lip is rather larger and thicker than the under, but both of them are covered with stiff hairs; the eyes of this creature are large and beautiful; its fore teeth small, and eight in number, and are only to be found in the lower jaw, though the animal has six grinders on both sides of each jaw. Directly before the horns there is a knob, which proceeds from an elevation of part of the cranium, and projects two inches above the surface; and behind them, or in the crag of the neck, there are two smaller ones, which are formed by the subjacent glands; the horns are seven inches long, i. e. a little shorter than the ears; they rather incline backwards, and are a little broader and rounded off at the ends, where they are encircled with long hairs, which reach beyond the horny part, forming a tuft. In fine, the horns are covered, like those of other animals, with a cutaneous and hairy substance; but the interior substance of them is said to resemble the heart or boney part of the horns of gazels and oxen, and to be processes of the skull itself. On the horns of this beast, when aged, there have been observed small irregular elevations, which M. ALLAMAND supposes to be the shoots of future branches.

The colour of this beast is a white ground, with large reddish spots standing pretty close to each other; which spots,

1776.  
January.

spots, in the more aged animals, incline to a dark-brown or black, but in the others border upon the yellow. The tail is small and slender, and is terminated by a large tuft of very coarse and mostly black fetaceous hairs; the fore parts of the hoofs are much higher than the back parts. This creature has no fetlocks, as all other hoofed animals have.

This animal when it goes fast does not limp, as some have imagined, but sometimes paces, and sometimes gallops. Every time it lifts up its fore feet it throws its neck back, which on other occasions it holds erect; notwithstanding this, it is by no means slow when pursued, as M. DE BUFFON supposes it to be, but, on the contrary, it requires a fleet horse to hunt it.

In eating the grass from off the ground, it sometimes bends one of its knees, as horses do; and in plucking leaves and small branches from high trees, it brings its fore feet about a foot and a half nearer than common to the hind feet. A camelopardalis which Major Gordon wounded in the leg, so that it could not raise itself from the ground, nevertheless did not shew the least signs of anger or resentment; but when its throat was cut, spurned against the ground with a force far beyond that of any other animal. The viscera resembled those of gazels, but this animal had no porus ceriferus. The flesh of the young ones is very good eating, but sometimes has a strong flavour of a certain shrub, which is supposed to be a species of *mimos*. The Hottentots are particularly fond of the marrow, and chiefly for the sake of this hunt the beast, and kill.

1776.  
January.

kill it with their poisoned arrows. Of the skin they make vessels, in which they keep water and other liquors.

M. DE BUFFON, who has very unadvisedly taken it into his head to declare war not only against LINNÆUS, but likewise against his disciples, has, in a prolix introduction to his Differtation upon the camelopardalis, (*Giraffe*, Tom. XIII.) in a peculiar manner insulted the memory of Dr. HASSELQUIST, a man whose merit has shone conspicuous in several different sciences. *School-boy, pedant, blunderer, &c.* are the terms, as reproachful as unmerited, in which M. DE BUFFON speaks of a man, who at too early a period, alas! for the interests of science, yet crowned with the applauses of the literati of Europe, fell a victim to his zeal for natural history. I could sincerely have wished to have avoided this display of M. DE BUFFON'S ungenerous conduct, that it might not reach to the knowledge of any others (besides those who are already acquainted with the fact) in how far, on occasion of the description of the above-mentioned animal, he has forgot the language of a gentleman; but my respect for truth in general, and a wish to throw a light on my present subject, the history of animals, forbid me to be silent on this head.

The respect likewise which I justly bear to M. HASSELQUIST, on account of his merit, and a full conviction of his innocence, call upon me to defend him; and that more particularly from the reproaches he has sustained for not having mentioned in his description of his camelopardalis, whether the horns of this animal fall off or not. If it be a fault in Dr. HASSELQUIST not to have mentioned what he could not possibly see, and not to have described,

described, like M. DE BUFFON, in the compleatest manner, what he could not possibly know, I must then confess myself faulty on the same grounds; as, though in fact I was allowed to draw up a description of the dried head of a camelopardalis at the Cape, yet I could not obtain permission to saw in pieces or dissect the horns, as they were promised by the governor to a particular friend of his in Europe. It is much to be wished, indeed, that M. DE BUFFON had followed Dr. HASSELQUIST's example in this respect, in which case his *Natural History* would have been much shorter, much more useful and authentic; and, what would have been still better, our oxen and cows would have kept their horns on their heads in the way in which nature has ordained they should, viz. without their falling off every third year, in conformity to the ignorant assertion of M. DE BUFFON, Tom. IV. p. 459, and of the edition revised by Mr. ALLAMAND, p. 176. He there says, "Ainsi la castration ni le sexe ne changent rien à la crue & à la chute des dents : cela ne change rien non plus à la chute des cornes, car elles tombent également à trois ans au taureau, au bœuf & à la vache, & elles sont remplacées par d'autres cornes qui, comme les secondes dents, ne tombent plus; celles du bœuf & de la vache deviennent seulement plus grosses & plus longues que celles du taureau. L'accroissement de ces secondes cornes ne se fait pas d'une manière uniforme, & par un développement égal; la première année, c'est à dire, la quatrième année de l'âge de bœuf, il lui pousse deux petites cornes pointues, nettes, unies, & terminées vers la tête par une espèce de bourrelet, l'année suivante ce bourrelet s'éloigne de la tête, poussé par

1776.  
January.

1776.  
January.

un cylindre de corne qui se forme, & qui se termine aussi par un autre bourrelet & ainsi de suite, car tant que l'animal vit les cornes croissent." For the sake of such persons as have not had an opportunity of being better acquainted with M. DE BUFFON and his works, I will just take occasion to observe, that this is the celebrated man, who, after a minute investigation of every concomitant circumstance (in consequence of which he has likewise favoured us with a particular description of the whole process) thought himself authorised to advance, that a comet, having struck against the sun in its course, beat several pieces out of it, of which the planets were formed, and has besides calculated the precise time which each of these celestial bodies respectively took to cool. But quite enough has been said of a blunder, which the most illiterate cottager is able to rectify, in case it should happen to mislead any raw school-boy, totally unacquainted with natural history. But as we are upon the subject of horns at present, I cannot help requesting M. DE BUFFON to inform me, how the smallest elk's horns, Tom. XII. Tab. XLVI. could grow from the size which, at page 326, under the article *mazames*, they are said to be of, (viz. not quite six inches long;) how these, I say, could grow so quickly, at page 357, 358, in the article *coudou*, to the length of two feet? if, indeed, the nice admeasurements of M. DAUBENTON, page 377, 378, MCXCIX. M. C. C. are in every respect to be depended upon. Neither can I better comprehend, why Messrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON make use of the same horns for two quite different animals; by doing which, they have induced two other zoologists, certainly in other re-  
pects

1776.  
January.

spects the greatest and most accurate in Europe, in like manner to refer to horns of one and the same species, for two different animals; though this, indeed, is not so much to be wondered at, these gentlemen being too complaisant to harbour such a degree of mistrust with respect to the *Histoire Naturelle*, as, in fact, was in this case necessary; neither could they easily suspect so palpable a mistake in this great work of Messrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON, concerning which, however, I fear, that many people will pass the same judgment, as M. DE BUFFON has done on SEBA'S *thesaurus*. But I must write a treatise consisting of many volumes, were I to continue to dissect M. DE BUFFON'S work; I shall therefore content myself at present with making, as briefly as possible, a few remarks on the *camelopardalis* and the *viverra ichneumon*, (the *giraffe* and *mangoust* of BUFFON,) on account of the descriptions of which M. HASSELQUIST has been so ill used.

M. DE BUFFON has not been able to point out, much less to demonstrate, any blunder committed by HASSELQUIST; but why does he then blame this learned and highly deserving *academician*? It is, indeed, astonishing, that he should consider HASSELQUIST'S descriptions as prolix, when, in fact, the same animals are treated of in one and the same Tome of M. DE BUFFON'S own writings; one of them in at least twice, and the other twelve times as diffuse a manner; notwithstanding which, this same volume is still farther swelled out with admeasurements of the *vagina* and urethra of the rat. Is it possible here to refrain from enquiring, what is the use of all this? since the animal alluded to has nothing extraordinary in the proportion of this part,

1776.  
January.

and stands in no need of any assistance with respect to its copulation, and never has any occasion either for the *catbeter* to be applied, or to be cut for the stone. The very cat itself, an animal which every old woman has it in her power to measure and examine in her chimney corner, has likewise been obliged to undergo the most minute and tedious admeasurements in the *Histoire Naturelle*, though at the same time, on account of the beautiful engravings, which, more than any thing else, threw a light on this work, the learned world, according to M. DE BUFFON'S own confession, l. c. page 9, might have been very well spared these trifles.

M. HASSELQUIST'S Latin, which M. DE BUFFON says is no Latin at all, is nevertheless perfectly good, and exactly such as is required for the purposes of science, concise, expressive, and easily comprehended by any one who has studied the language, and may even be understood by any school-boy that has made the least progress in this department of learning. It is not HASSELQUIST'S fault, that his description as it is quoted by M. DE BUFFON, l. c. page 7 and 8, from negligence, ignorance, or malice, has been so badly copied from the original edition, so that e. g. from it may be concluded, that the animal's teeth and tongue are round, and are placed on its head together with its horns, &c. How was it possible for this circumstance to escape the critical eyes of the great BUFFON, supposing indeed that he understands Latin, and, as he expresses it at page 15, l. c. is capable of seizing the genuine knowledge of nature by means of *la vue immediate de l'esprit & coup d'oeil du genie?*

In

1776.  
January.

In short, I am sorry that Dr. HASSELQUIST's description should appear dry to M. DE BUFFON; but I cannot help thinking, that if it had been stuffed and seasoned with unjust and ill-natured criticisms, with conjectures and mistakes, even though it had been composed in the French language, and in the most tumid and high-flown style, most lovers of truth and natural knowledge would have found it in the highest degree disgusting. The reader needs only compare Major GORDON's description with that of Messrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON, in order to be convinced of the insignificancy and futility of all their tedious deductions and calculations.

Had M. DE BUFFON taken the pains to understand, and made use of HASSELQUIST's Latin description, instead of quoting it, merely for the purpose of criticising it right or wrong, he would have known, that the head belonging to the skin described by M. HASSELQUIST, was four spans, or at least two feet long; and consequently, that the descriptions of OPPIAN, HELIODORUS, and STRABO, are by no means adapted, as M. DE BUFFON affirms they are, to give a tolerably just idea of the *camelopardalis*, or *giraffe*; for, according to these, a *giraffe*, of the size of a camel, has a head not above twice as large as that of an ostrich: a creature which would certainly make a figure in Prince P\*\*\*'s collection of monsters. (Vide BRYDONE'S Tour, Vol. I. page 93.) We are, however, too well acquainted with, and have too great an esteem for, the extensive genius and learning of the Count DE BUFFON, in the least to suspect him to be of the same taste; although, besides the circumstance above alluded to concerning the head,

1776.  
January.

head, he terms the *camelopardalis* at one and the same time the handsomest, and, with respect to its legs, the most enormously disproportionate animal in the whole creation; though other people are apt to consider that only as beautiful which is proportionable. M. DE BUFFON might likewise have learnt from Dr. HASSELQUIST's accurate description of this quadruped, that neither the head nor legs are so disproportionate, as he imagines them to be. In fine, Major GORDON did not find this animal so tottering, slothful, and unwieldy, as it has pleased M. DE BUFFON, without any authority, but that of his own prolific imagination, to represent it in the description he has given of it.

With regard to the *viverra ichneumon*, or the *mangoust*, I shall only say, that at the Cape I had an opportunity of comparing M. HASSELQUIST's description of it with the creature itself, and found it remarkably accurate. This same gentleman having observed in a note, that the French, when in Egypt, are accustomed to bestow French names on the natural objects of which they have no knowledge, and consequently have in all probability given the name of *rat de pharaon* to this animal; M. DE BUFFON considers this remark as an attack upon the French nation. But if M. DE BUFFON means by this, to excite his countrymen against Dr. HASSELQUIST, he must pardon me when I tell him, that I am too well acquainted with the generosity and discernment of the French nation in general, to suppose that his desires would be gratified. For my part, I can have no inducement on the score of any national predilection to take Dr. HASSELQUIST's part against M. DE BUFFON, as all those who are occupied in enlightening themselves and mankind

by the promotion of science, are, as being fellow-labourers, to be considered likewise as brethren and fellows of a community, in which it is necessary for each to assist the other in promoting the object of their common pursuit; in a word, they are countrymen and fellow-citizens of the commonwealth of literature. After all, whether there is any foundation for this observation of Dr. HASSELQUIST or no, in neither case can it in the least affect the reputation of the French merchants who are used to visit Egypt, whether they are said to give French or Latin names to the subjects they see, or whether they take the pains to learn the Arabic, Turkish, or Coptic names of them; still less could it have been M. HASSELQUIST's intention by any remarks of his, to cast a reflection upon a whole nation.

To conclude, if M. DE BUFFON had read and taken the pains to understand M. HASSELQUIST's book, with any other view than that of criticising LINNÆUS and his disciples, he might have easily found by it, that HASSELQUIST's manuscripts were seized in Egypt after his death, being afterwards redeemed by the munificence of a great queen, and through the conspicuous love and zeal for science of the same exalted personage, were ordered to be printed in the manner mentioned in the preface; and that consequently, the author himself could not put the last hand to his work; in which case, indeed, he possibly, either from memory or from his notes, which were lost by his untimely death, might have added the description of the interior part of the *giraffe's* horn, which M. DE BUFFON seems to have so very much at heart. Perhaps, likewise, M. HASSELQUIST, in order to please M. DE BUFFON, would have somewhat curtailed

1776.  
January.

1776.  
January.

tailed his description of the *mangouft*; though, as I have said before, it is much shorter than it is in the *Histoire Naturelle*.

I have doubtless said sufficient at present, to convince a man of M. DE BUFFON'S great genius, that even he, with his superior talents, is capable of committing blunders, and at the same time has in particular done great wrong to *academicians* of the highest merit: and that if, on the contrary, he should rather shew that he is touched with compassion for their sufferings, and is at the same time happy on every occasion to vindicate their reputation when attacked, he would give manifest proofs of that magnanimity and candor which, in a great man, ought always to go hand in hand with his talents, and which would most assuredly add to the esteem which every lover of literature entertains for them.

Of the *tiger-bosch-kat* I have made mention above, and had an intention of describing it in this place, (together with the rest of the African animals) from the skin of this creature which I brought home with me; but find that it has since been so accurately described and delineated from the live subject by Dr. FORSTER in the *Philosoph. Transact.* Vol. LXXI. for the year 1781, that I can refer the reader to it with the greatest pleasure.

On the 21st of January, as I have mentioned above at page 169, we took our departure from *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*. In the afternoon we arrived at Great *Visch-rivier*, where we again resolved to try our luck in the pursuit of *sea-cows*; for I was determined not to depart out of the country, before I had made as accurate an investigation of this

1776.  
January.

this large, though not unknown animal, as I had of the *two-horned rhinoceros*. On our arrival at a certain spot upon *Vifch-rivier*, we found several farmers from the province we had just left, who had arrived there before us. In their company, likewise, came to this place a husbandman, or, as they are usually called here, a *corn-boor*, from the country near Cape Town. When we first saw him he was sleeping under a shady tree, by the side of a perfect beauty, who was clad in a light summer dress: no wonder then, that so uncommon and romantic a scene appearing on a sudden in a desert, should immediately chase away all those images of desolation and wild horror, which the savage and dreary aspect of these plains had begun once more to excite in mine and my friend's imagination: and I would not answer for him, that he would not soon have forgot all his botany, had he suffered himself any longer to be carried away, by the first delightful and charming impressions made on him by the contemplation of so perfect a production in the chief of the three kingdoms of nature. On our entering into conversation with them, our voluptuous corn-boor and his beautiful spouse informed us, that they had just been to pay a visit to their relations at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, where having experienced for the space of six months the sweets of the ease and convenience attending a pastoral life, when compared with the drudgery of that of the husbandman and wine-dresser, they had given up all thoughts of their former business, so that they intended to sell their vineyard and corn-farm near the Cape, and to look out for some spot in these parts, proper to carry on the grazing business. Our conversation on this subject was now in-

1776.  
January.

terraptured by the arrival of another farmer and a little boy of their party, who informed us, that some wild beast, probably a tiger, had just before come upon one of the hounds by stealth, and torn it to pieces, while it was drinking out of the river, on the very spot where our informer told us he had just been laying down for an afternoon's nap, having risen from it only half a minute before. They, as well as we, had only heard the dog give one single squeak; after which it was found quite dead. So that in all probability the wild beast had, previously to this, lain in wait for the little boy, in order (as they said) pursuant to its usual custom, to kill him in a fly insidious manner, and then, after a short interval, to return and carry him off.

In the mean while, this incident put us all instantly into an alarm, and occasioned us to take to our arms in order to revenge ourselves. Accordingly, several couple of hounds were put upon the scent in a thicket close by the river side, where the wild beast still lay concealed, while we posted ourselves round about. The hounds, which followed the scent with great eagerness, soon drove the tiger out, and that only forty or fifty paces from our best shot, a little old farmer, who shot him flying, as it were, while he was springing from the ground. The ball was found afterwards to have entered at the upper edge of the *anus*, and to have made its way through the whole length of the body, till at last it came out at the animal's mouth; as a great part of the palate was missing, and the remainder of it, close by the fore teeth, was bloody, without these latter, however, being damaged in the least. I do not know whether this can be explained from

1776.  
January.

from any particular position of the animal, or rather from the circumstance of the ball, in consequence of the resistance it met with, having gone out of the right line. On the body of this wild beast we found a little *bippobosca*, totally unknown to naturalists, which they told me was usually met with on the carcases of tigers. They likewise informed me, that a peculiar sort of fly, much larger than this, in all probability likewise of the *bippobosca* kind, subsisted on the body of the lion.

The animals which I and the colonists in this part of Africa call tigers, are of that kind which are represented in Tab. XI. XII. and XIV. Tom. IX. of M. DE BUFFON'S work, under the denomination of *panthers* and *leopards*. At the Cape I have likewise seen several skins of the *ounce* of M. DE BUFFON, which, by some of the colonists, was distinguished from the former by the name of *leopard*, and was said to live chiefly in the mountains, and to be less common, bold and daring, though more treacherous and deceitful, than the animal usually called tiger at the Cape, or the *panther* of M. DE BUFFON: to which, however, it is equal in point of size, though the skin is not so beautiful, nor so much coveted, as it is more shaggy, and covered with longer hairs, neither is it so much spotted nor so glossy.

Both these sorts, when they happen to come in the way of six or eight hounds of the common sort, which, in fact, are used by the colonists for this purpose, are easily caught, or else torn in pieces by them. I saw at one farmer's only at *Gantze-craal*, about fourteen or fifteen furs of tigers, as they are called, which were said to have been taken and

1776.  
January.

killed within the space of three years, by the common dogs belonging to the farm; now and then, however, a dog or two had lost their lives in the conflict, or else had been very much wounded.

I was told, that a slave who looked after his master's cattle, had been attacked unawares and by stealth on the plains between *Tiger-mountain* and the *Cape*, by a tiger, with which he had long struggled and rolled about upon the ground: at length, however, the tiger was overpowered by the slave, who, notwithstanding the dangerous wounds he had received, recovered. This, though bordering on the marvellous, is not absolutely incredible; for when revenge, or the dread of instant death, is added to a man's natural strength and vigour, he is almost capable of performing supernatural things. I recollect, moreover, to have read, in JONSTON'S *Tbaumatographia Naturalis*, that a man of the name of POLYDAMAS, was able, unarmed, to kill a lion. The tiger, however, that we shot at this place, seemed to me to be rather dangerous to grapple with. It was thought to be old and about the usual size. I cannot find in my note-book, whether I had taken any notes of the measure; but I think I remember that the beast was two feet high, but much longer in proportion than a dog of the same height.

Very early in the afternoon, the hunting party above-mentioned went away, and about an hour before dark there arrived a hord of *Caffres*. They had got within three hundred paces of us, before we discovered them, being to the number of about one hundred, all men, and each of them armed with a few *bassagais*, or a couple of *kirries*. They  
marched,

1776.  
January.

marched, moreover, directly on towards our waggon, not with the careless gait of ordinary travellers, but with measured steps, as it were; and, in short, with an almost affected pride and stateliness in their deportment, as they approached nearer to us. Upon the whole, we could not well have received a visit on this spot more unexpected, nor of a more alarming nature; indeed, it occasioned a visible consternation in several of my Hottentots, at the same time that it puzzled my friend and me, to think in what manner we should receive this nation so on a sudden, so as to avoid sharing the unhappy fate which, as I have already mentioned before, at page 154 of this volume, attended HEUPPENAER and his suit. In case of an attack, my Hottentots were too few in number, and too cowardly to be depended upon; such of them as were of the Boshies-man's race, and had come with us from *Zondags-rivier*, would probably have assisted in plundering our waggon, had they found a convenient opportunity; and who knows, whether they were not in secret intelligence with the Boshies-men, who were at this time in the service of the Caffres, and belonged to their party. They had long pressed me to leave *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*. At least I had hints given me afterwards, that this visit of the Caffres was not accidental, but was paid me in consequence of some intelligence given them by certain Hottentots at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*. However, I had not then time to go into such deep speculations on the subject, being entirely occupied by the apprehension, lest the party under my command, by the smallest appearance of cowardice or a disposition to mutiny, should call forth the usual enterprising spirit of the *Caffres*. I was very sensible that my friend

1776.  
January.

friend and I, mounted on our horses, would have been a match for them, in like manner as the two men were who revenged HEUPPENAER's death; but in this case, we had not a moment to lose, much less had we any spare time to fetch our horses from pasture. I therefore resolved instantly to carry matters with as high a hand as it was possible for me to assume in the situation we were in, especially as I knew from experience, that by this means the Indians might sometimes be kept in awe just like children. Accordingly, I began with my own *Hottentots*, threatening with the most terrible Dutch oaths my memory furnished me with, to shoot the first man through the head, who should stir a foot without leave, or once open his mouth to the Caffres; or, in fine, should not, at the smallest nod, perform what I might think fit to command. My companion, on his part, taking a handful of bullets, put them into a loaded gun of an uncommon length which he had brought with him; in the mean time frequently addressing himself to me, and making it out to be a very easy matter (and of the feasibility of which there could be no doubt) to kill with it the whole body of Caffres at a single shot, in case they should offer to behave in a hostile manner; and at the same time, in order to give some probability to this gasconade, did not omit to practise a few manoeuvres in the true legerdemain style. While Mr. IMMELMAN was thus with his long gun, beyond all doubt, making a tremendous figure in the eyes of the Caffres, and I was likewise armed with my gun, and the fiercest mien I could possibly muster up, they came towards us wedged up, as it were, into a close body, with three leaders in  
their

1776.  
January.

their front. A Hottentot interpreter in one of the wings, seemed just going to open with a long harangue; when I put a sudden stop to his sublime oratory, by accosting him with a few rough compliments in the Swedish language, and turning my back upon him.

This haughty and uncivil reception, which would only have served to irritate any other than Hottentots and Caffres, on the contrary, from the very beginning, abased their pride, so that they stood like a parcel of orderly, or rather intimidated, school-boys, and waited for my questioning them; upon which we, in quality of the principal sons of the company, ordered our interpreter to ask them what nation they were of? Whence they came? and whither they were going? For the purpose of making this examination, I called out JAN SKEPER, the most alert and intelligent of all my Hottentots, and had the satisfaction to see him fly to me like a flash of lightning; a proof of his obedience, which, indeed, was at this time very agreeable to me; as it was requisite in order to excite in the Caffres a high opinion of our authority and power: but the still higher ideas, and even dread which he had conceived of this nation, put his whole body into a tremor, so that even his teeth chattered in such a manner, that he could not utter a word. This unlooked for cowardly behaviour, threatened to spoil my whole plan; for which reason, both from indignation, and in order to disguise the reason of his trembling, I threatened him very hard, and accosted him in the roughest manner. I am not certain, however, whether the Caffres were not more sharp-sighted than I wished them to be;

1776.  
January.

however that be, some of them fixed their eyes upon him and laughed.

Whenever the interpreter of the Caffres offered, which he did several times, to enter into a private conversation with my Hottentot, I constantly took care to prevent it. In fine, the account they gave of themselves was, "that they were Caffres from *Konaps-rivier*, and were come hither merely with a view of meeting with us, and to see whether we had brought with us a great deal of iron and copper to exchange for their cattle; for they knew from report, that we were come from a great distance, and had long resided in these plains."

In the mean while, this proposition of theirs with respect to the traffic and cattle, appeared to me extremely suspicious, inasmuch as I could not at that time perceive that they had brought any live stock along with them; and those which their herdsmen and boys brought to this place afterwards, consisted merely in a few milch cows and young steers, upon which they set an amazing high price, and in all probability, intended them for their own support during their march.

In order to prevent their sitting down without being previously asked, I told them without delay by means of the interpreters, that they had my leave to sit down, whilst I gave my answer on the subject of their proposed commerce. Accordingly they sat themselves down in the same order as they came, viz. the three Chiefs in front of the rest. I asked, nevertheless, how many of them were captains or commanders; and the three foremost being mentioned

1776.  
January.

tioned by name as such, I gave each of them a good piece of tobacco; telling them, at the same time, that this was the way the company's sons chose to receive their friends the *Caffre captains*; but that we had already exchanged our iron and copper in these very plains with some other *Caffre* friends; that, however, I imagined that they had not taken their journey in vain, in case they called at *Agter Brunijes-boogte*, where they would get enough of these commodities from the farmers settled there.

When they saw that, in order to get tobacco, nothing more was necessary than to be a captain, they presented to me several others of the party, as being likewise *t'Ku-t'koi's*, or captains, and asked for tobacco for them; but the scheme not succeeding, they themselves laughed heartily at the captains of their own creation. Neither did they shew the least inclination to distribute to these pretended chiefs, any part of the presents that had been made them. However, in order to keep the real chiefs in good humour, I likewise gave them afterwards a handful of dry hemp, which they accepted as a valuable present; and mixing it with some tobacco, smoked it with a high relish, while we were talking together. The pipes out of which they smoked, were circulated merely among the chiefs, had stems above four feet long, from 3-4ths of which the pith had been taken out, but by what means I am entirely ignorant. Where this hollow part of the pipe seemed to terminate, a bowl three inches long but very narrow, appeared to be fixed at the bottom of the stem, being kept firm and steady with a band or collar, in the same way as the stays of a mast are in a ship. From the small bore and size of this bowl, one

1776.  
January.

may venture to conclude, that these Caffres were but indifferent smokers compared to the Hottentots.

When they heard that we intended to hunt the *sea-cow*, and that these animals were rather uncommon as well as shy in these parts, they told us, that about *Konap-river*, these creatures were seen to come up out of the river in the very middle of the day, and both to sleep and graze in the fields there; where, in fact, for the sake of defending themselves from the attacks of their enemies, they were collected in as great numbers as the pebble-stones I actually saw scattered by the side of *Visch-rivier*, on the spot on which we then stood. Though this comparison was, it must be owned, in the true Oriental style, yet it is probable that these animals were really to be found in great numbers about the river above-mentioned; and that they were far from being shy, but grazed and slept on land in open day, as the Caffres informed us; for, in consequence of the uncultivated state in which they were, and particularly as they had not the use of fire-arms, these people must necessarily be obliged to give way to animals of such strength and magnitude.

When it grew dark, the Caffres stood up, and without any kind of order, or taking leave, went towards a large bush, at the distance of a musket-shot from us, where they made a great fire, near which they took up their repose for the night. Shortly after we heard a hideous roaring near that spot, and we conjectured that it proceeded from some beast they were killing. Accordingly Mr. IMMELMAN and I hastened thither, to see it, and found the beast, which had been felled to the ground, lying on

1776.  
January.

its right side, with its left fore leg bound over its head; neither was any other binding or fastening necessary, as the animal lay tolerably still, though not yet dead; while five or six people stood by, and made several incisions with their haffagais into its stomach, which they afterwards took out through an opening they made for that purpose in the chest. I do not know whether this way of slaughtering beasts is practised by any other nation; it certainly appeared to be a very cruel one, though while this business was dispatching, a good deal of mirth and laughter seemed to pass between those who had the management of it. The whole of this operation, however, did not take up a long time, the animal's pain terminating with its life in about two minutes after the first incision had been made. Immediately after this they set about flaying the beast piece-meal, with the assistance of their haffagais, and cutting the hide into slices of different forms and sizes. These were likewise intended to be eaten, as I afterwards learned from one of my Hottentots, who the next day got a broiled piece of it, in exchange for a little tobacco; and assured me, that when an ox or cow's hide was well dressed, viz. first boiled in water and then in milk, it is by no means a contemptible dish.

While we were standing to see the beast slaughtered, we took notice that all the spears and haffagais, exclusive of those that were used in killing the animal, were piled up together in the middle just before one of the chiefs, who was now observed to be very busy in issuing out his orders; these orders being obeyed without delay by those who looked after the fire. Indeed, they did not seem to pay the

1776.  
January.

least regard to our being present : however, as it was grown very dark, we thought it most adviseable not to make a long stay. We had scarcely got home, before their interpreter came along with two Caffres to borrow our porridge pot. This message our Hottentots interpreted to us in a sorrowful tone, adding, that the Caffres usually kept what they borrowed, else we must have a (*rusje*) or dispute with them. As our porridge pot was absolutely a treasure to us, and was particularly useful to our Hottentots, for the purpose of boiling and melting their fat, &c. and the Caffres probably could not have withstood the temptation of keeping it, I thought it was as well to have a *rusje* with them at first as at last. I endeavoured to pacify them however, by a civil answer; and sent them word, that if the company's sons had two porridge pots, they would certainly lend one of them to their friends the Caffres; but that we were then hungry, and were going to dress our victuals that very night : to which I added, that some skill was requisite in order to dress victuals in our pot, so that they might not be spoiled; for which reason, I would myself take care to have their meat dressed for them the next morning, as soon as ever they should send it to my Hottentots. It is true, they suffered themselves to be put off with this compliment; but we could not tell for all that, whether they might not take it in their heads to send a shower of darts in the night, before we were aware of it, through the tilt of our waggon, in the same manner as happened to HEUPPENAER, whose story I have related at page 154 of this volume; on which account we fortified that part of our waggon with our saddles, and the skins of  
beasts,

1776.  
January.

beasts, and defended ourselves on the sides with bundles of paper, clothes, and pieces of dried rhinoceros's hides. Two guns, with their muzzles pointed in a proper position, were placed at each end of the waggon, so that we could directly, on the first rupture, discharge four pieces; moreover, in order to increase the alarm and terror of the enemy, we were then, as well as at the first arrival of the Caffres on the preceding day, prepared to throw, if necessary, powder-horns and large cartouches into the fire, which was about eight or nine paces distant from us: we were likewise on this occasion to have filled our pockets without delay with loose gunpowder, in order to keep up from our fire-arms, a brisker, though less effectual fire, and a continual report, with a view to frighten the enemy at a distance. We considered our horses and oxen too, which, according to our constant custom, were tied to the waggon all around it, as a kind of intrenchment, having particular reason to expect, from the shyness of our horses, previous notice of any attack; so that upon the whole we slept tolerably secure: and though, even after such ample preparations for our defence, we thought ourselves happy to escape being attacked by the enemy, yet still we could not help wishing that we had been able to gratify our friends with an account of an assault on the part of the Caffres.

I cannot help thinking, however, that the instances we have of the deceitful dispositions of the barbarians in general, and of the sudden transitions which are sometimes made by them from a state of peace and tranquillity to that of rapine and slaughter, are sufficient to justify all our suspicions, and the precautions we took with respect to them;

1776.  
January.

them; and I am inclined to consider the being massacred by these fellows, as one species of the sudden death, against which we are taught to pray in the Litany. I have lately been informed by a letter from Mr. IMMELMAN, dated from the Cape, 25th of March, 1781, that the *Caffres* at that time were laying waste every thing they could meet with in the districts belonging to the Christians: among others PRINTSLO, my old worthy host, and the first I had at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, had had the mortification to see his new house burnt to the ground by these barbarians, after having lost his numerous herds of cattle, out of all which he had been able to save no more than six oxen. A woman, of the name of KOETSJE, had with great difficulty escaped the pursuit of these barbarians, having been obliged to leave one of her children behind her, which had been pierced through the body with seven *haffagais*. The loss of the Christians in the article of cattle, is said to amount to twenty-one thousand; while, on the other hand, they could not meet with the third part of that number of cattle belonging to the *Caffres*, who, Mr. IMMELMAN tells me, were led on by the Captains MOSAN and KOKA. I cannot say whether it was either of these that paid us a visit, as I forgot to take down their names, and therefore cannot remember them so as to be certain of them. Just after midnight it rained, with thunder and lightning.

The next morning (being the 22d) at ten o'clock, the whole party of *Caffres* went away without taking leave, after having, under pretence of selling a milch cow, tried to get a sight of all the iron and copper which they supposed I had brought with me: however, that I might not lead

1776.  
January.

lead them into temptation, I shewed them nothing but plants and insects, which I told them were the only commodities I had of any moderate value; these, however, I supposed they would hardly take in exchange for their cow, which we otherwise, on account of the store we set by the milk, would have been glad to have bargained with them for.

After this they bent their course towards *Agter Bruntjesboogte*, and were met on the road by three farmers, viz. JACOB POTGIETER, with his son FLIP, and his son-in-law FRANS LABESKANJE, who were coming with three Hottentots, according to agreement, to strengthen our party, and to enable us the better to block up and shoot the sea-cows.

As the colonists are strictly prohibited from carrying on any kind of commerce with the Hottentots and Caffres, and as besides these peasants, not without reason, suspected the Caffre's designs, apprehending at the same time, that they would at least strike a terror by their arrival, in those whom they left at home behind them, they at first endeavoured to dissuade them in a friendly manner from going to the town; and afterwards had recourse to threats, which succeeded better; assuring them, that in case they would not go their way peaceably, they would make a great havock among them with their fire-arms; which, in fact, as they were on horseback, they might do without danger, by successively dispatching them in small parties, in the same manner as I mentioned at page 143 and 154 of this volume, and of which the Caffres were not ignorant.

As

1776.  
January.

As to the external appearance of these *Caffres*, I found them not so tall in general as the *Gonaquas Hottentots*, and the *Caffres* I saw with that people; neither were they nearly so much adorned with copper and beads: they were, however, full as robust and manly.

While I was waiting for the arrival of the three farmers, and there was no particular natural subject about this spot that required peculiar attention, I set about digging in the earth after antiquities. I had before this, during my first residence near *Groote Visch-rivier*, observed heaps of stones larger than those few I had seen near *Krakeel-rivier*, and composed of stones equal to them in bulk. They were from three to four and four feet and a half high, and the bases of them measured six, eight, and ten feet in diameter. They likewise lay ten, twenty, fifty, two hundred paces, and even farther asunder, but constantly between two particular points of the compass, and consequently in right lines, and those always running parallel to each other.

I likewise found these heaps of stones in a considerable number, and knew from the account I had on this subject from the colonists, that they extended in this manner several days journey from this spot, in a northern direction, through uncultivated plains, into the *Sneeze Vlaktens*, as they are called, where they are said to be met with in a still greater number of parallel lines. These monuments are therefore considered as irrefragable proofs, that this tract of country was formerly inhabited by a race of people, who were more powerful and numerous than either the *Hottentots* or *Caffres*, whose sepulchral rites, as  
well

1776.  
January.

well as other customs, and above all their inconceivable sloth and idleness, are too well known for them to be suspected of such large, and, to all appearance, useless undertakings.

In the mean while, in order to discover the intention of these heaps of stones being collected together, many conjectures were formed with various degrees of probability: thus much, however, is certain, that they could not have been collected together by any other than slaves. But whether this was done by a people bending beneath the yoke of superstition, or else under that of monarchy or of an oligarchy, I shall not pretend to determine. In the first case it is probable, that they conceived themselves bound to make offerings like these, of useless toil and trouble, to their tyrannical gods; or in the latter case, were compelled to pay this tribute to the pride and vanity of some tyrant, who even after death, for the sake of immortalizing and procuring vain and imaginary honours for his dust, contrived in this manner to waste the strength, and exhaust the forces of his surviving subjects. Under the influence of which soever of these causes the stones have been accumulated, they are certainly the relicks of some early period, in which, whether smarting under the scourge of superstition or that of a tyrant, some populous nation has dwindled away to a few scattered herdsmen, or else has been degraded to the present race of Caffres, Hottentots, Boshies-men, and savages.

In some few heaps of stones, I observed that the foundations only had been laid, or perhaps the stones had been carried off, till the remainder was level with the surface of

1776.  
January.

the earth. As these seemed most convenient for the purpose of exploring the ground, Mr. IMMELMAN and I rode nearly three miles to one of them, which was in the vicinity of *Koks-craal*, in order, as I said before, to search after antiquities, or any relicks whatever of antient times, concerning which I was in hopes of getting information.

A bar of iron, two feet long, which we had taken with us in order to dig up bulbs and roots with it in the course of our journey, was the only instrument we had fit for our purpose; and we had not an opportunity of taking any more hands with us by way of assisting us, than the youngest of our Boshies-men, a stout, willing, and alert young fellow. We met, however, with impediments not to be overcome, in large stones piled up close together, so that with our united strength we could not get more than two feet deep into the centre of the heap, and that not without great labour and trouble; and at last found nothing more than some rotten bits of trees, and something that appeared to be a piece of a bone quite mouldered away. The Hottentot who before this, induced by the tobacco which we promised him, had assisted us, though not without sneering us a good deal, and ridiculing us in his own language, which we did not understand, at last fairly burst out a laughing, and began likewise, with an air of great indignation, and moralizing on the matter, to turn his back upon the work. To this may be added, that this district was very much noted for harbouring lions; and that our horses, which we had turned out upon the pastures, with their heads and legs tied together, had strayed away, and were missing a long time before

before we could find them again among the bushes on this dangerous spot.

1776.  
January.



In the dusk we got home to our waggon, and were not a little pleased with the punctuality of the three farmers before spoken of, who were now come, agreeably to their promise, to assist us in hunting the sea-cow: though at the same time I was, and am still exceedingly vexed at having missed the opportunity of exploring, in a proper manner, and with a sufficient degree of accuracy, the heaps of stones occurring in these parts; an investigation which would probably throw much light on the nature of mankind in general, and more particularly on its pristine condition in this part of the world. There was a vague report propagated here, that a farmer had found on a spot near the district of Camdebo, some antient stone ruins. This story I shall make no comment upon; yet, together with the heaps of stones so often mentioned, it forms a subject worthy of a particular and close investigation: and this could not be done by any one better than Major GORDON, who, being a member of the regency at the Cape, and a man of great genius and an inquisitive turn of mind, would certainly have as great a claim to the gratitude of the public by his successful labours on this subject, as he has already by clearing up the remarkable history of the *camelopardalis*.

*Jacob Koks-craal*, which I have mentioned before, and put down in my map, is a place which is in general passable with waggons; and from the situation of the mountains near it, and other circumstances, is said to be the key, as it were, to the northern part of Africa. It is reported

1776.  
January.

to have obtained the name it now bears from the circumstance of JACOB KOK, my friend at *Zeekoe-rivier*, who, with several others, had intended to make a long journey a great way up the country, having been detained for several months by an unusual flooding of the water; which indeed was so great, that the force of the stream even prevented them in their attempts to cross it on a float of wood. On this, as well as on the preceding night, we had thunder and rain.

On the next morning, being the 23d, we set off from hence, in order to go to another part of the river. This day I for the first time perceived that my lazy Boshies-men run faster and hold it out longer, than I should otherwise ever have supposed. The farmers, who had lately joined our party, and who were better apprised of this circumstance than we, as well as of what was to be expected from these gentry, obliged some of them to carry our arms, and at the same time follow as fast as we rode; our pace in general being an ordinary trot, which we now and then changed to a gallop, for several hours together, over different kinds of ground. Once or twice, indeed, we made a little stop; but twice at other times, having taken our arms from them and carried them ourselves, we went the faster, by which means we soon got somewhat a-head of them, but did not wait long before they came up to us. In short, I found then, as well as afterwards, that even the oldest of these fellows would run about twenty miles in the space of three or four hours, without appearing to be extremely fatigued by it. The farmers moreover assured me, that they knew of Boshies-men, who could hold out

in

in this manner all day long; and had, by this means, ran down, and with their own hands destroyed, many elks or hart-beests, especially when these creatures had been previously wounded. Indeed, most of the people belonging to this nation are obliged, for their support, to acquire this swiftness of foot; to which, besides their manner of life, and their education from their infancy, cannot but dispose them.

1776.  
January.

Towards evening, after having lost our way several times, we came by a number of by-roads to a pit in the river, which our new guides, the farmers, knew used to be frequented by sea-cows. For this reason, all the different ways, by which these animals might come up from the river, were beset by us separately, our hunting-party consisting in the whole of seven persons; viz. five of us Christians, together with my Hottentot and another belonging to the farmers. Besides this, the rest of the Hottentots were ordered to go to the windward and to the more open places, and by smacking their whips and making other noises, to frighten and drive the animal towards us, as soon as it should make its appearance: in consequence of which measures it appeared to us, that, when at length obliged to go on shore in quest of its food, it must necessarily come to the hiding-place of some one of the hunters. Every one of these places were just at the edge of the river, between the reeds which grew on the dry parts of the river, or on those spots which the water had left, and at the same time close to the very narrow paths which the animal had made for itself at each place: in consequence of which disposition, it would inevitably pass not above six inches, or a foot at most, from the mouth of the sportsman's piece. Consequently our whole dependence

was

1776.  
January.

was upon two circumstances, viz. that our guns should not miss fire, and that the shot should not fail to prove mortal. In the former case, the sportsman must have inevitably paid for his temerity with his life; though in the latter he had reason to hope, from instances of what had happened to others, that the fire, together with the report from the piece, as well as the ball itself, would confuse the animal, so as to prevent it from immediately making towards its enemy.

The banks of the pit, which we then beset, were in most places steep and perpendicular, and the pit itself was almost three quarters of a mile long: but my post, and that of my fellow-traveller, happened to be at the distance of not above thirty or forty paces from each other. To these very places too, after we had waited at them an hour and a half, in the most profound silence, the enormous animals did not fail to resort. They had already, while on the other side of the river, got scent of the Hottentots, and now shewed by their swimming up and down and blowing themselves, as well as by a short but acute and piercing grunt, or neighing noise, that they had a great suspicion of these passers. I believe Mr. IMMELMAN was not less eager and anxious than myself, each of us expecting every moment to have a bout with a huge enormous beast, which we knew had given certain proofs of its being able to bite a man asunder. Yet were we each of us at times no less fearful, lest the other should have the honour of killing game of such consequence. The *hippopotamus*, however, left us, and had made its appearance in the same manner, where the farmers were stationed; notwithstanding which,

at that very instant we heard it shot at by one of the Hottentots.

1776.  
January.

The fable darkness of the night, and the glittering of the Hottentot's piece, together with the loudness of the report from it, occasioned by the weight of the charge, and the vibrations of the echo prolonging the sound along the neighbouring chain of mountains, all conspired to compose a most awful and superb spectacle, which was still heightened by the expectation of seeing an animal fall superior in bulk to the elephant. This sublime spectacle was immediately followed by a ridiculous kind of farce performed by a troop of baboons, which, from their calling and answering each other along a strait line, we could discover to be encamped on a steep rocky mountain in the neighbourhood, with regular out-posts in the trees on each side of it. After an interval of a couple of minutes, silence again took place till two o'clock, when the other Hottentot fired his piece, and another alarm, though of shorter duration, went through the baboons out-posts and head-quarters.

The next morning, for the arrival of which we ardently longed, in order to satisfy our curiosity, our Hottentot sportsmen related to us the following particulars concerning the adventures of the night. Involved in darkness, covered up to the eyes in reeds, and overshadowed with branches of trees, they could only get a glimpse of the animal, and consequently could not answer for their shots having taken place: and one of them acknowledged, that he was a little confused, as he could not well see what he was about; and for the same reason fired his piece too soon, before the animal had well risen out of the water;

1776.  
January.

water; the other, indeed, had had an opportunity, both with the ball and shot that made up the charge, of wounding the animal, which went on its road and passed directly by him; but he could not see which part of the animal presented itself before the muzzle of his piece. As soon as he had fired, he flank away, and directly afterwards heard the beast take to the water. The rest of the Hottentots had observed one of these animals, probably a different one from this, run up on a shallow along the river side, and thus make its escape, without their having been able to prevent it. After this we staid here till the afternoon, in hopes that the wounded animals would die and rise to the top of the water, but we staid in vain; and to as little purpose would it probably have been, had we waited still longer, as there grew by the side of the river a great number of trees, to the roots of which these creatures, it is said, in the agonies of death, make themselves fast, by means of their long and crooked tusks. On the other hand, supposing these two sea-cows to be but slightly wounded, they would be cautious how they made their appearance; and, indeed, in all probability, it would have been a dangerous service to the sportsmen who should have ventured to have followed them any farther. Besides, the water had now, in the space of a few hours, risen considerably, and had overflowed many spots fit for lying in ambush; for which reason we departed to another hippopotamus-pit, less than this. Here too we laid, by way of snare, a large blunderbuss, which the farmers had brought with them for that purpose; the Hottentots occupied one post, Mr. IMMELMAN and LABESCANJE guarded another;

1776.  
January.

another; the oldest of the farmers, POTGIETER, with his son FLIP, stationed themselves at the third, and placed me in the middle of them. Just in this part, the banks of the river were of a considerable height, and the river itself was dried up, near an extensive shallow, where it was spread out into a little plain covered with pebble-stones and gravel. We three then set ourselves down close by the side of each other, in a path made by the sea-cows, making ourselves pretty certain, as the place was flat, and consequently it was light here, of being able, if any hippopotamus should chance to come upon the shallow and look about it, to see it plain enough to kill it, with a volley of three shot. But, to the great endangering of our lives, we, on a sudden, found the animal much quicker in its motions, as well as bolder than we had thought it: for while I was sitting half asleep and moralizing on the subject, struck with the consideration, that we, with our guns, had at that present moment the dominion over Job's *Leviathan* or *Bebemoth*, while on the other hand, the flies, or small musquitos, had the dominion over us, (so much, indeed, that I was obliged to wrap my face up in a handkerchief,) a sea-cow came rushing upon us out of the river, with a hideous cry, as swift as an arrow out of a bow; at the same time, I heard the farmer call out, " *Heer Jesus!*" but fortunately at the very instant he discharged his piece, which flashing full in the animal's face, contributed, perhaps, more than the ball, to make it start back; when setting up another cry, it threw itself into the water again with as great precipitation as it came out.

1776.  
January.

At this I was not a little alarmed; yet, what is very singular, not at the danger, which was real, of being trampled under foot, or being bitten asunder by the beast, but in consequence of my apprehensions, which were merely imaginary, of being drowned: for the rattling noise, arising from the creature's running out of the water and along the stoney beech, immediately suggested to me the idea, that the river had on a sudden overflowed its banks: a supposition to which I was the more inclined, as I knew that this accident happens more frequently here than at *Gauritz-rivier*, (for an account of which I must refer the reader to Vol. I. page 254 :) and as the *hippopotamus*, when it is newly come up out of the water, and is wet and slimy, is said to glisten in the moon-shine like a fish, it is no wonder, that as soon as I took my handkerchief from before my eyes, it should appear to me, at so near a view as I had of it, like a high column of water, which seemed to threaten to carry us off and drown us in a moment: for which reason, I ran, or rather flew towards the higher ground, leaving both my guns and my brother sentinels behind me; but, as just at this spot, I was prevented by the steepness of the river's banks from ascending the heights, and nevertheless perceived that neither my companions nor myself were drowned, it ran in my head, for the space of several seconds, that we were all of us either dreaming or delirious. The farmer's son had fallen asleep, and still continued to sleep very soundly: as to the farmer himself, who, panting and breathless, every now and then looked up to heaven, and at the same time, with much awkwardness and bustle, was endeavouring to  
make

make his escape, I made all the haste I could to disengage him from a large wrapper, which, as well on account of his gout as by way of keeping off the flies, he had wrapped round his legs. I then asked him what course the water had taken when it overflowed; and he, after a long pause, answered only by asking me in his turn, if I was not mad; upon which I was almost ready to put the same question to myself: and even at last, when all this was unriddled to me, could not help doubting of the truth of it, till I found the farmer's gun was really discharged; for the rattling among the stones and the squashing in the water, occasioned by the sea-cow, was what I first heard, and what made me take to my legs; so that I did not attend in the least either to the report of the gun or the cry of the animal, though these latter appeared to the rest of our party the most terrible; so much, indeed, that they occasioned Mr. IMMELMAN, together with the farmer's son-in-law, to fly from their post, though they had seen nothing of all that had happened, and could not easily have come to any harm.

We concluded the chase, and spent the remainder of the night in laughing at each other; in chattering and forming various conjectures on the subject of the precipitation and impetuous fury of the sea-cow, which, however, was probably as much alarmed and frightened as we ourselves could possibly be: we even smoked a couple of pipes, while we listened to the roaring of the lion, and waited for the approach of the morning. Several Hottentots then told us, that soon after the noise and tumult we have been describing had ceased, they had seen a sea-cow, making its

1776.  
January.

way out of the river towards that side of it which was un-  
guarded.

On the 25th, from some traces of the sea-cows which we found in the dust near another spot, we concluded that many of these huge amphibious animals had lately taken up their quarters in a certain pit thereabouts, which we accordingly prepared to lay siege to in every possible way.

In the mean time, we saw a young lion make its escape into a close thicket, on the side of this same pit, where it might be perfectly safe from us and our hounds. Not much approving of this animal's being so near a neighbour to us, we thought it best for several of us marksmen to be together at each hiding-place; at the same time ordering our Hottentots, partly by making a noise and uproar, and partly by the means of making large fires, to frighten the sea-cows from attempting any of the other passes.

These animals had probably been beset in the same manner several times before, as this night we scarcely heard any thing of them. In the mean while, however, we flattered ourselves, that by continuing to block them up, we should at least by starving them, force them to quit their asylum, and expose themselves on the land to the fire of our guns.

On the 26th likewise, we were on the look-out after these animals, between the hours of ten and eleven in the forenoon, and also just before dusk, though upon a quite different plan from what we had before, as we meant now to hit them on their snouts the instant they should stick them up within the reach of our guns out of the water, in order to take breath, or more properly, (as

1776.  
January.

it is not unaptly called by the colonists) to blow themselves. In order that the shot might prove mortal, we were obliged, however, on this occasion, to direct it in such a manner, that the ball should pass through the cavity of the nose into the brain. It was merely upon this plan, that we went out after the sea-cows, before we arrived at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, and were strengthened by the farmer's party. But we constantly found these animals too shy, to allow us to put our designs in execution: for although in those places where they had not been frightened or wounded, they will often in the middle of the day raise their heads and part of their bodies above the surface of the water, they at this time scarcely ventured just to put one of their nostrils only out of it, in order to breathe almost imperceptibly; and this only for the most part, in those spots in which they were sheltered from us by the hanging branches of trees. Notwithstanding this disadvantageous situation, in consequence of the acuteness of their smell, they seemed still to discern us, especially when we were to the windward of them; as in that case they instantly withdrew to another part.

The same night, we betook ourselves again to our posts; and in the dusk of the evening, I saw a little animal, which probably was an otter, stick its head up out of the water and blow itself a little, suffering itself for a few moments to be borne away by the current.

At half an hour after eight, it being already very dark, a sea-cow began at intervals to put its head up above the water, and utter a sharp, piercing, and, as it were, a very angry cry, which seemed to be between grunting and neighing. Perhaps this cry may be best expressed by the words,

*bëurkb*

1776.  
January.

*hëurkk burkk, bub-bub*: the two first being uttered slowly, in a hoarse but sharp and tremulous sound, resembling the grunting of other animals; while the third, or compound word, is founded extremely quick, and is not unlike the neighing of a horse. It is true, it is impossible to express these inarticulate sounds in writing; but, perhaps, one may make nearer approaches to it, than one can to the gutturo-palatial sounds of the Hottentot language.

At eleven o'clock came the same, or else some other *bipopotamus*, and in like manner visited the posts we occupied; he did not, however, dare to come up, though to our extreme mortification we heard him come and nibble the boughs which hung over the surface of the water, as well as a little grass and a few low shrubs which grew here and there on the inside of the river's banks. We were, however, in hopes, that this way of living would not long suffice animals, one of which only required almost a larger portion than a whole team of oxen. Thus far at least is certain, that if one should calculate the consumption of provisions made by a sea-cow, from the size of its fauces, and from that of its body and of its belly, which hangs almost down to the ground, together with the quantity of grass which I have at different times observed to have been consumed by one of these animals in spots, whither it has come over night to graze, the amount would appear almost incredible.

On the 27th day, we met with the misfortune of one of our Hottentots having heedlessly hit the muzzle of his gun against a rock, so that it went off and shot him through the foot, at the same time wounding several others in the legs

1776.  
January.

legs with the shivers of the ball (a composition of lead and tin) which was split in pieces against a rock. As provisions were now scarce with us, we were obliged in the day-time to ride a good way round about the neighbourhood in search of game. Exclusively of our having had an opportunity of giving chase, *en passant*, though without success, to a *lion* and a *byæna*, we had the good luck to catch a young wood-pig, and to shoot a hart-beest; but our Hottentots going only two hours afterwards to fetch off the flesh of the latter, the eagles had already consumed the major part of it. In the afternoon it thundered, and we passed the following night at the same posts as we occupied on the night preceding, the sea-cows acting much in the same manner as before.

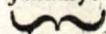
On the 28th, after sun-rise, just as we were thinking of going from our posts home to our waggons, there comes a female hippopotamus with her calf, from some other pit or river, to take up her quarters in that which we were then blockading. While she was waiting at a rather steep part of the river's banks, and looking back after her calf, which was lame, and consequently came on but slowly, she received a shot in her side, upon which she directly plunged into the river, but was not mortally wounded; for FLIP, the drowsiest of all sublunary beings, who had shot her, and that instant could hardly be awakened by two Hottentots, was still half asleep when he fired his piece; and happy was it for him, that the enormous beast did not make towards his hiding, or rather sleeping-place, and send him into the other world to sleep for ever. In the mean while his shot was so far of service, that one of my

1776.  
January.

my Hottentots ventured to seize the calf and hold it fast by its hind legs, till the rest of the hunting party came to his assistance. Upon which the calf was fast bound, and with the greatest joy borne in triumph to our waggons; though while they were taking it over a shallow near the river, the Hottentots were very much alarmed, lest the wounded mother and the other sea-cows, should be induced by the cries of the calf to come to its rescue; the creature, as long as it was bound, making a noise a good deal like a hog that is going to be killed, or has got fast between two posts. The sound, however, proceeding from the hippopotamus calf, was more shrill and harsh. It showed likewise a considerable share of strength in the attempt it made to get loose, and was found to be quite unmanageable and unwieldy; the length of it being already three feet and a half, and the height two feet; though the Hottentots supposed it to be no more than a fortnight, or at most three weeks old. When at last it was turned loose, it ceased crying; and when the Hottentots had passed their hands several times over its nose, in order to accustom it to their effluvia, began directly to take to them.

While the calf was yet alive, I made a drawing of it, a copy of which may be seen in the Swedish Transactions for 1778, and likewise in Plate IV. of this volume. After this it was killed, dissected, and eaten up in less than three hours time. The reason of this quick dispatch was partly the warmth of the weather, and partly our being in absolute want of any other fresh provisions. The dried skin, which I brought home with me, is of the thickness of the sole of a thin shoe, and at the same time was very stiff.

Not-

1776.  
January.  


Notwithstanding these disadvantages, I have had it stuffed for the cabinet of the Royal Academy, so as to bear a tolerable resemblance to the living animal, excepting that the belly could not be sufficiently distended. On this account, the drawing given by M. ALLAMAND from a stuffed hippopotamus's calf, and afterwards copied in M. DE BUFFON'S Supplement, could not but be incomplete, in respect that it is too lean, and the toes or hoofs too far distant from each other. The eyes, moreover, are made too large, and just the same may doubtless be said of the figures given of the adult hippopotamus in the same place. We found the flesh and fat of this calf, as flabby as one might have expected from its want of age, and consequently not near so good as that of the old *sea-cows*; of which I found the flesh tender, and the fat of a taste like marrow, or at least not so greasy and strong as other fat. It is for this reason, likewise, that the colonists look upon the flesh and fat of the sea-cow, as the wholesomest meat that can be eaten; the gelatinous part of the feet in particular, when properly dressed, being accounted a great delicacy. The dried tongues of these animals are also considered, even at the Cape, as a rare and savory dish. On my return to Sweden, I had the honour to furnish his Majesty's table with a dried sea-cow's tongue, two feet and eight inches long. With respect to form, the tongue of a full-grown hippopotamus is very blunt at the tip, and is, in fact, broadest at that part; if, at the same time, it is slanted off towards one side, and marked with *lobes*, as I was informed it is, this circumstance may, perhaps, proceed from the friction it suffers against the teeth, towards the side on which the

1776.  
January.

animal chiefly chews; at least some traces of this oblique form were discoverable on the dried tongue I am speaking of.

On the skin of the hippopotamus calf which I had stuffed for the Royal Academy, there are some stiff reddish-brown hairs, from a quarter to half an inch long, some on the inside of the ears, and others about the nose and the back part of the neck; but they grow so scattered and thin, as to be at the distance of 1-8th, or even half an inch from each other. There are also hairs upon the back like the former, excepting that they are still more thinly scattered and shorter; these were longest on the edges of the tail, as I formerly observed in the description I gave of this animal in the Swedish Transactions, though they have since fallen off during the stuffing of the animal. The rest of the hide is quite bare of hairs. The tail itself is flattened at the sides, and consequently the edges or sharp parts of it look upwards and downwards, as in the tail of the rhinoceros.

The tusks, or canine teeth are to be seen on the calf here described, already grown to the length of half an inch; but those of the large sea-cows weigh, according to KOLBE, ten pounds. An assertion which is, however, criticized by M. DE LA CAILLE, at page 349, who asserts, that they scarcely weigh three pounds. M. DE BUFFON again, Tom. XII. page 38, says, that the weight of one of the grinders exceeds three pounds, and that the tusks are each of them from twelve to sixteen inches in length, and weigh twelve or thirteen pounds. On the other hand, though I have actually had an opportunity of seeing a great many very large sea-cow-teeth, yet I find that one of  
the

1776.  
January.

the largest size which I had brought home with me and presented to the Royal Academy of Sciences, weighs no more than six pounds nine ounces, and is twenty-seven inches long, measured along the inside of its curve; and consequently about twice the length, and at the same time not half the weight of that mentioned by M. DE BUFFON. It is therefore to be hoped, that this illustrious author will excuse my presumption in doubting the accuracy of his account, especially as M. DAUBENTON himself, at page 62 of the same tome, makes the length of a canine tooth of the hippopotamus to be twenty-six inches, and consequently twice as long as it is affirmed to be by M. DE BUFFON. I have not yet weighed a grinder of one of these animals; at present, however, I cannot help doubting, whether M. DE BUFFON can find any that exceed the weight of three pounds; for an elephant's grinder, which I brought home with me as a present for the cabinet of the Royal Academy, weighs four pounds and a half, and is nine inches broad; but yet, to judge from the eye, was at least three times as large in every dimension as any grinder of a hippopotamus, with which I compared it, and of which I have had an opportunity of seeing great numbers, in several skulls, in different spots on the banks of *Visch-rivier*, being the relicks of sea-cows which the farmers had shot there from time to time. From what has been said it likewise follows, that KOLBE is in this place most to be depended upon. M. DE BUFFON is, however, in the right, when he asserts, l. c. page 48, that KOLBE took the figures of his animals from other people, and composed most of his descriptions from

1776.  
January.

memory, so that no great dependence is to be placed upon them.

The mouth of the hippopotamus is so large, that though a full third of the enormous tusks above-mentioned in the lower jaw, as well as several of the fore teeth which project forwards, stands above the gums, yet they are not seen except when the animal opens his mouth.

The hide of the adult hippopotamus bears a great resemblance to that of the rhinoceros, but is rather thicker. Whips likewise made of this hide are stronger, and, after being used some time, are more pliable than those made of the hide of the rhinoceros usually are, though they are not so transparent as these latter are when new.

The food of the hippopotamus consists entirely in herbs and grass, a circumstance of which we are informed by Father LOBO; and which may partly be inferred from what I have already said on the subject, as well as from the figure of the stomach belonging to the *fœtus* of a hippopotamus given in Messrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON's elegant work. I therefore do not look upon it as very probable, that these animals, agreeably to the assertions of M. DE BUFFON, page 93, or of DAMPIER in his voyage, should hunt after fish by way of preying upon them; especially as in some of the rivers of the southern part of Africa, where the sea-cows are seen daily and in great abundance, there is not a fish to be seen; and in others only a few *bastard springers*, as they are called, (*cyprinus gonorynchus*) which are scarcely as big as a common herring. It is said, that a small species of carp is still more rarely to be met with here. It is

1776.  
January.

is true, that the sea-cows sometimes frequent the mouths of the rivers here, which are full of sea-fish, and even sometimes the sea itself: we know, however, that these huge quadrupeds are notwithstanding this, obliged to go from thence upon dry land in quest of food. Neither is it probable that they can drink the sea-water; as an instance was related to me of the contrary in a hippopotamus, which, having been disturbed in the rivers, had taken refuge in the sea, and yet was obliged to go ashore every night and drink fresh water from a well in the neighbourhood, till at last it was shot by some people that lay in wait for it there. That the hippopotamuses actually lived in salt-water, I have seen evident proofs at the mouths both of *Kromme* and *Cam-tour* rivers, particularly in the latter, on my journey homewards; where many of these animals blowed themselves in broad day-light, and thrust their heads up above the water; and one of them in particular, which had been wounded by an ill-directed shot on the nose, neighed from anger and resentment. In *Krakekamma* I saw on the beach manifest traces of a hippopotamus which had come out of the sea, but had retired thither again directly. That very attentive navigator Captain BURTZ informed me, that he had frequently seen on the eastern coast of Africa sea-horses (meaning probably the hippopotamus) raise their heads above the surface of the water, in order to blow themselves and neigh. I have been induced to be rather circumstantial on this subject, as M. ADANSON has taken it into his head, in his *Voyage au Senegal*, to limit the abode of the hippopotamus to the fresh water rivers only in Africa; and M. DE BUFFON has taken upon him to support this opinion,

1776.  
January.

opinion, and to render KOLBE's testimony to the contrary liable to suspicion.

An old experienced huntsman told me, that he had once seen two hippopotamuses copulate, which they did in the same manner as common cattle. On this occasion the beasts stood in a shallow part of the river, where the water reached up to their knees.

The size of the largest of the two sea-cows measured by ZERENGHI, was, according to BUFFON, Tom. XII. page 31, as follows: The length sixteen feet nine inches, the girth fifteen feet, the height six feet and a half, the aperture of the mouth two feet four inches wide, and the tusks were above a foot long, clear of the sockets.

The method of catching the hippopotamus consists (besides shooting it) in making pits for it in those parts which the animal passes in his way to and from the river; but this method is peculiar to the Hottentots, and is only practised by them in the rainy season, as the ground in summer is too hard for that purpose. It is said that they have never succeeded in killing this huge aquatic animal with poisoned darts, though this way of killing game is practised with advantage by the Hottentots for the destruction both of the elephant and rhinoceros. The colonists, likewise, were not entirely unacquainted with the method mentioned by M. HASSELQUIST, as being common in Egypt, viz. to strew on the ground as many pease or beans as the animal can possibly eat, by which means it bursts its belly and dies. But as this method is very expensive, and they can generally have this animal for a single charge of powder and a tin ball, shot in a proper direction, they chiefly

8

and

and almost solely have recourse to this cheaper expedient.

1776.  
January.

The hippopotamus is probably not so quick in its pace on land as the generality of the larger quadrupeds, though perhaps it is not so slow and heavy as M. DE BUFFON, l. c. page 39, describes it to be; as both the Hottentots and colonists look upon it as dangerous to meet a hippopotamus out of the water, especially, as according to report, they had had a recent instance of one of these animals, which, from certain circumstances, was supposed to be in rut, having, for several hours, pursued a Hottentot, who found it very difficult to make his escape. M. KLOCKNER confirms this opinion, by the insertion of a story to this purpose related by one MARAIS.

The people of this country did not entertain that opinion of the medicinal virtues of the hippopotamus, as they did of certain parts of the elephant and rhinoceros; excepting one colonist, who imagined he had found the *os petrosum* of this animal, reduced to powder, and taken in the quantity that would lie on the point of a knife, excellent in convulsions, and particularly in the convulsions (*Stuypen*) of children. That the flesh is reckoned very wholesome food, I have already mentioned.

Having already exceeded the limits I had prescribed to myself, I do not intend to dwell here on the anatomy of the hippopotamus we caught, particularly as the internal conformation of the calves is somewhat different from that of the adult animal. I shall, therefore, only briefly mention the following particulars: the stomachs were four in number, and consequently one more than in the foetus examined

1776.  
January.

examined by M. DAUBENTON, which was kept in spirits. Compare BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. IV. Fig. 2. The two first stomachs, which correspond with, and were somewhat similar to the stomachs H. and L. (l. c.) were each of them about seven inches long, and three inches in diameter; the third was nine inches in length, and a little wider than the two former; the fourth was seven inches long, and at the upper part five inches broad, but decreased by degrees on one side till it terminated in the *pylorus*, which had an aperture an inch in width, being about half as wide again as the *cardia*. I did not observe any such valves as M. DAUBENTON has delineated. The first stomach we found mostly empty, it containing only a few lumps of cheese or curd; it likewise differed from the rest by the superior fineness of its internal coat. The internal membrane of the second stomach was rather coarser, and had many small holes in it; it likewise contained several clods of caseous matter, together with a great quantity of sand and mud. The third stomach had very visible folds, both longitudinal and transversal, on the inside of it, and contained caseous lumps of a yellow colour and harder consistence than the others, together with several leaves quite whole and fresh, and at the same time some dirt. The interior membrane of the fourth stomach was very smooth, though it was not without folds; in the stomach itself there was a good deal of dirt, with a small quantity of curds, which were whiter than they were in any of the other stomachs. This fourth stomach in a great measure covered the rest, being situated on the right side of the animal, and was found to have the upper part of the melt adhering to its superior and interior

1776.  
January.

interior edge. This latter viscus, which was one foot long and three inches broad, diverged from it downwards on the left side. The intestinal canal was 109 feet long; the liver measured fourteen inches from right to left, and seven or eight from the hind part to the fore part. On its anterior edges it had a large notch, being in other respects undivided and entire; it was of an oblique form, being broadest towards the left side, where I discovered a gall-bladder five inches in length. In the uterus there was nothing particularly worthy of observation; I found two teats and the heart, surrounded with more fat in proportion than the elk-antelope's heart, described at page 208 of this volume; the length of this muscle was five inches, and the breadth about four inches and a half. The communication between the auricles called the *foramen ovale*, was above an inch in diameter; each lung was eleven inches long and undivided; but at the superior and exterior part of the right lung, there were two globules or processes elevated half an inch above the surface; and on the side corresponding to it, in the left lung, and in the upper part of it, there was a little excrescence, terminating in a point; somewhat below this, yet more forwards, there was found likewise a process, half an inch in height. Directly over the lower part of the communication formed between the right and left lung, there was a kind of crest or comb, measuring an inch from the top to the bases.

One of my brother sportsmen said, he had once observed a peculiar kind of vermin on the body of one of these amphibious animals; but on the calf we had caught we found nothing but a species of leech, which kept only

1776.  
January.

about the anus, and likewise a good way up in the strait gut, where, by a timely abstraction of the blood, they may be of use to these large amphibious animals; and particularly may act as preservatives against the piles, repaying themselves for their trouble in kind. Most of them were very small, but on the other hand there was a considerable number of them. The only large one I saw of this species, being somewhat more than an inch in length, I described and made a drawing of; this is inserted by the name of the *Hirudo Capensis, corpore supra nigricante, medio longitudinaliter sub-brunneo, subtus pallidè fusco*, in the elegant treatise on worms, which M. ADOLPHUS NODEER, first secretary of the Patriotic Society, is preparing for the press. Instead of the lighter coloured streak upon the back, there was discoverable in some of these leeches, one, and sometimes two longitudinal brownish lines, which grew fainter and fainter towards the extremities.

The huge animal, of which we have been speaking, has doubtless obtained its present name of hippopotamus, which signifies river-horse, merely in consequence of the neighing sound it makes; as otherwise in its form it bears not the least resemblance to a horse, but rather to a hog. Neither does it in the least resemble the ox; so it could be only the different stomachs of this animal, which could occasion it to be called *sea-cow*, at the Cape; and, perhaps, it is for the same reason, that the Hottentots call it the *t' gao*, which nearly approaches to *t' kau*, the name by which the buffalo is known among these people.

From the account given by BELLONIUS of a tame hippopotamus, which he describes as a beast of a very mild  
and

1776.  
January.

and gentle nature, as well as from the disposition of the calf we had just caught, it follows, that this animal might be easily brought over to Europe, where it has been formerly exhibited at two different times in the public spectacles at Rome. (Vid. PLIN. lib. 8. and DION. CASS. lib. II.) For this purpose, the capture might easiest be made at *Konaps-river*, where these animals, according to the accounts given me by the Caffres, reside in great abundance; and milch-cows might be kept ready at hand, in order to rear the calf, in case it was a suckling. Indeed, I am apt to suppose, that one a little older than this, would not be very nice in its food; as that which we caught, was induced by hunger, as soon as it was let loose near the waggon, to put up with something not extremely delicate, which had been just dropped from one of our oxen. This, perhaps, may appear very extraordinary in an animal with four stomachs; but there have been instances of this kind known in common cattle, which in *Herjedal* are partly fed with horse-dung \*. (Vid. A. A. HULPHER'S *Beskrifning om Norrland*, 3:je Saml. *om Herjedalen*, page 27—87.) I have been likewise assured, that this method of feeding cattle has been practised with great advantage in *Uplandia*, when there has been a scarcity of fodder; and that afterwards these same cattle, even when they have not been in want of proper fodder, have taken to this food of their own accord, and eaten it without any thing else being mixed with it.

At noon the temperature of the air was, according to Fahrenheit's thermometer, 104 degrees; and the heat of

\* HULPHER'S Description of Norway.

1776.  
January.

the sun, to which I had been to-day particularly exposed, occasioned me to have a violent head-ache, which, however, was sensibly relieved, by wetting my head all over with vinegar. The length of time we had set up, had likewise not a little contributed to this indisposition of mine; notwithstanding which, we resolved still to continue blockading this place. The following night, however, it was uncomfortable and even dangerous to keep at our posts, in the open air, as there fell a violent thunder-shower, which not only made some of our fire-arms useless, but even extinguished the fires we had made at the upper side of the pit; so that two sea-cows had the boldness to venture out of the water at this place, and run along the shallow in the river. We fired, indeed, a shot at them in the dark at a venture, but without effect.

On the 29th in the morning, finding that it would not be worth while to stay here any longer, we took our departure, going towards the south, and hunting *buffaloes* and *koedoes*, one of which latter leaped into the river, as I have before mentioned at page 216 of this volume. In the evening, we had hardly taken our oxen out of the waggons, and unsaddled our horses, before a large rhinoceros passed within fifty paces of our waggon, probably without seeing any thing of us; as otherwise, in the opinion of the Hottentots, this enormous animal would not have failed at least to have turned our waggon topsy-turvy. I have made mention of this rhinoceros at page 111 of this volume. It was, as we afterwards learned, in the midst of its flight, having been hunted just before by two of our party. It had likewise got to a good distance from us, before we could

get our fire-arms out of the waggon ; so that two shot that we sent after him, could not possibly have any effect. Our hounds, which at first were able to keep close to the animal's heels, formed a strong contrast to the colossal size of this animal ; while the beast on his part did not seem to take the least notice of them, but, with a trifling rise and fall of the neck, kept on an even and steady course, which was a kind of pacing, but notwithstanding rid a great deal of ground ; which pace, however, was, by the report of guns, changed to a very fast gallop, so that the hounds were in an instant left behind at a great distance : and it appears to me, that any sportsman, though mounted on an excellent hunter, would inevitably be lost, who should be pursued by this animal, and should not know how to get out of the sight and scent of it, by shifting and dodging occasionally. The rhinoceros was said, in this particular, to resemble the elephant, that without delaying or stopping in the least, it will run to the distance of many leagues from the place where it has been closely hunted, or in any other way molested.

On the 30th, we set out for *Kleine Vischs* river, in hopes of succeeding better there in our pursuit after the sea-cows. In the night it rained.

On the 31st, we hunted some elk-antilopes, and afterwards met in these desert tracts of country with a young farmer, from the *Camdebo* quarter, who had taken a journey hither, in order to look out, together with a slave and two Hottentots in his service, for a proper place to settle in. In the mean while they were feasting on some of the prime parts of a buffalo, which they had shot. In pursuance  
of

1776.  
January.



1776.  
January.

of the directions we received from this man, we found three rhinoceroses, viz. a female, with her calf of no inconsiderable size, and a male, which was much larger than the female; and, indeed, was the largest of all the rhinoceroses I had ever seen. This last was hit in the shoulder by a ball from one of the Hottentots, who lay concealed behind a bush, a circumstance which occasioned the animal to rush forth into the plain, where all the sportsmen that were provided with horses were stationed; and now, being greatly alarmed, betook themselves to flight. The greatest braggadochio in the whole company, was the first on this occasion to set an example of prudence, and a spirit of self-preservation in the extreme, by clapping spurs to his horse and galloping off immediately; and was the last to turn back and pursue the maimed and limping beast, whither it soon turned off towards a different quarter, and by this means at last made its escape through a close thicket.

One of my Hottentots, who in fact was our driver, but whom I had used in some measure to shooting, and had at this time entrusted with a gun, that he might assist the other sportsmen, was accused by them of having shewn, on this occasion, a greater inclination to skulk and hide himself, than to join in the sport. On which account, I having, by way of punishing him, given his gun to one of the Boshiesmen, he did not, indeed, discover any concern at the time; yet, perhaps, was even in this respect, capable of being actuated by ambition and emulation, as, indeed, are many of his countrymen; as a proof of his punishment having had an effect upon him, shewing that very day afterwards upon other occasions, though entirely without arms, great boldness  
and

and courage ; in consequence of which he, that evening, ran the risk of being trampled under foot by another rhinoceros.

1776.  
January.

To conclude, we now quitted our horses, in order to go with a party of our Hottentots and trace the wounded rhinoceros on foot. We were able to follow the traces of the animal in this manner during the space of half an hour, notwithstanding the ground's being very dry and hard ; for a Boshies-man, who was our principal leader, and went before us with the deepest silence and utmost attention, pointing occasionally to the earth, was very skilful in observing (and regulating our course accordingly) where the dried grass or dust had been disturbed or displaced in the least ; which, with all the attention I was master of, I was not able to discern ; though in more than one spot, we found, nevertheless, some plain and distinct prints of the rhinoceros's feet, a proof that our leader had taken us right. In fact, necessity and custom render the sight, faculty of observation, and judgment of the Hottentots, very acute in this respect ; just as, on the other hand, by the same means they have acquired the talent, which is universally acknowledged, of finding water in spots they are unacquainted with, much better than the Christians ; a talent, which alone serves them instead of a compass, in particular exigencies, and precludes the necessity of supposing them to be endued with a particular acuteness in the organ of smell, as they are erroneously represented to be by some, who, living at a distance from the Hottentots, have no great opportunities of knowing this peculiar race of men. This, however, is no argument, that the instances we have of other men who have been endued with a very fine and acute

1776.  
February.



acute smell, not much different from that of the hound, may not be perfectly true. In the evening, we rode home to our waggons; but the greater part of our Hottentots did not come home till the next morning, after having shot a young buffalo.

On the 1st of February, my horse fell down with me, in hunting the elk-antelope, as I have already mentioned at page 212 of this volume. The same evening, two of our Hottentot marksmen found a rhinoceros lying on its right side; and so fast asleep withal, that it did not wake, though they chanced to make a considerable clattering, by their gun-barrels striking against each other, when they first happened to see it through the bushes, being then at the distance of three or four paces only from its hinder parts, and immediately in their fright took aim; but when they found that the animal did not wake, they gave themselves time to reflect a little, and, after holding a consultation upon the matter, took a circuit round a couple of bushes, and having placed themselves so that they could point the muzzles of their guns right against the animal's head, discharged their pieces both at the same instant into its brain: but afterwards again, the animal making a few trifling struggles, they were afraid it might come to itself again; for which reason, as well as for their amusement, they charged again, and fired several balls into its chest. This incident, together with the account given me by an old hunter, of a rhinoceros which he found so fast asleep, that he had it in his power to go very near to it and shoot it, induced me to believe, that this animal sleeps very sound; though the case seems to have been quite otherwise with the one-horned rhinoceros which

which Dr. PARSONS made his observations upon, and gave a description of in London.

1776.  
February.



On the 2d, when I went to dissect the rhinoceros which had been shot the day before, I found that my Hottentot marksmen, with a view the better to preserve the flesh from putrefying, had taken out the entrails as soon as the beast was dead; I saw, however, very evidently, from the liver, that these animals have no gall-bladder; a circumstance about which one of the farmers belonging to our hunting-party entered into a dispute with me, and for which reason we were at that time very eager to chase them.

One of my Boshies-men, who had been ordered to come to us, and help to cut up the rhinoceros, and at the same time bring with him a few things which we wanted, put us very much to our shifts by staying away. It seems that he had rather chosen to repair to the elk which had been shot the night before, partly because he preferred the taste of elk's flesh, and partly as, like the rest of his countrymen, he set great store by the sinews and *aponeuroses* of the elk; particularly those on the back of the animal, as forming the best strings that could be got for their clokes.

Now this Hottentot, though according to our articles of war, as well as from his own experience, he might expect to receive a good drubbing for an act of disobedience of this kind, yet he made his appearance quite free and easy, with several slices of a honey-comb in his hand, and making an excuse in his language, which was interpreted to me as follows: "That the *boning-wyzer* (*cuculus indicator*, vide page 186 of this volume) had enticed him quite away from that part of the country, where the rhinoceros was,

1776.  
February.



to that where the elk lay; but that he had now brought with him a considerable quantity of honey to smear my mouth with." I, on my part, accepted both of the excuse and the bribe; as my brother sportsmen, whose mouths began to water at the latter, unanimously voted, that the Hottentot had done better in following the honey-guide, than he would have done had he obeyed our orders.

But where could a Boshies-man Hottentot, bred and born in the wild and desert plains near *Zondags-rivier*, where could such a one as this learn the art of bribing? Was it of his simple companions, or rather from the readiness of the more enlightened colonists to give these heathens in this manner a proof of their forgiving dispositions? It is a great pity that I could not determine this question with any degree of certainty, a determination which would have thrown much light on the nature of man in his savage state! It deserves, however, to be remarked, that the Hottentots in *Houtniquas*, who are in a much more civilized state, are said now and then to endeavour to soften their judges with presents of honey; and even sometimes to succeed in their attempts, and thereby to obtain besides certain privileges.

This day we took an ostrich's nest, and gave chase to the elk, which I mentioned at page 211 of this volume, as having sweated blood. At night we laid siege to a sea-cow-pit, out of which too a sea-cow came running up, but made its escape, after two of our company had fired at her in the dark, and missed her.

On the 3d our Hottentots again saw a couple of rhinoceroses, a circumstance which, for the information of others, and

and particularly of the posterity of the colonists of this country, with respect to the numbers, and, as it were, peculiar abode of this huge animal in these parts, seems to me to be worth noticing here. It may not be amiss likewise, for the sake of giving the reader some notion of the disposition of the Hottentots in general, to mention, that our driver spent twelve hours in running to a place and back again, where he had recollected that he had left his wooden tobacco-pipe two days before, though he could have made another as good in a little more than half the time. Here it may be remarked by the by, that he walked all the way alone and without weapons, and consequently ran some risk of becoming a prey to the lions. Neither this, nor the following night, did we succeed in our attempts on the sea-cows in the pits of Little *Visch-rivier*.

1776.  
February.



On the 5th, the three farmers who had come to our assistance on the 22d of January, took leave of us in order to go home. We had kept company with each other much longer than we had at first expected; the reason of which was, our having had such bad success in hunting the sea-cow. Once, viz. on the 28th of January, it was, as I have already observed, the fault of FLIP. The extraordinary drowsiness of this youth, of which I have given an instance at page 279 of this volume, proceeded in all probability from a passion, which yet, for the most part, makes others sleepless. For FLIP, though a brisk lad in other respects, and bold and daring to a degree in the chase, one who had been the death of many a buffalo, and who, at so early a period as two years before, being out with a hunting party after the lion, had fired the first ball into the body of that

1776.  
February.

fierce animal, was yet so timid with respect to the fair sex, that he had long been deeply in love with a fine girl in his neighbourhood, without daring to let either her or any one else know it; till one day when we were riding cheek by jowl over the desert plains, he divulged his passion to me, (no doubt because I was a physician) and at the same time asked my advice. I, on my part, prescribed to him to disclose his sentiments to the object of his affections in writing. Though this way of wooing was, in all probability, entirely unknown to FLIP, as well as, perhaps, to the greater part of the colony, yet he placed an implicit faith in the remedy, and the physician was invested with the office of dictating the terms of the billet-doux. The epistle was accordingly written on the round lid of my box; and, as may naturally be supposed, in a pretty amorous style, though in a curious kind of broken Dutch, which favoured very strongly of the foreign dialect of the inditer; but as the girl, in all probability, would lay a greater stress on the looks of her lover, who was a smart well-made young fellow, than upon his letter, I was in hopes that, notwithstanding these disadvantages, my epistle would prepare the way to his good fortune, than which nothing could give me greater pleasure.

On the 6th of February, with Mr. IMMELMAN and my nine Hottentots, I set out again on our road home to the Cape, and in the afternoon arrived at the well of *Quammedacka*, described at page 81 of this volume. Here I first began to have an earnest longing to revisit the Cape, having, almost as well as could be expected, accomplished the purposes for which I undertook the expedition into these parts; and having hitherto, partly by means of the remarkable objects

which actually presented themselves to my notice, and partly in consequence of being in continual expectation of meeting with them, been able to pass the time with some degree of pleasure, under more fatigues and difficulties than can easily be imagined. Besides, I was now obliged to hasten back to the Cape, that I might not be overtaken by the winter season, and miss the opportunity of returning, or at least writing to Europe, by one of the East-India homeward bound ships.

1776.  
February.

In the evening I rode along with a Hottentot to the spot where we had shot the two rhinoceroses on the 19th of December, and found the greater part of these animals already eaten up or destroyed; but the skulls were still in good preservation. Having taken the least of these with us, and being about to return to our waggon, in our way we found a female rhinoceros with her calf. These animals had probably been drawn out from the place of their retirement by the cool of the evening, and were just then coming out to graze for the night. The calf had already attained the size of a small ox, though its horns were of a very trifling size, in comparison with those of the mother; and upon the whole, it followed and was guided entirely by every motion of her's. I would gladly have waited with the greatest patience, in order to explore this animal's manner of eating and digging up roots, &c. but the night was approaching, and it would have been too dangerous an undertaking for us two, to pass the night on these plains, which abound with lions and rhinoceroses, without the apparatus necessary for making a fire. Besides, the clattering noise made by the caparisons of our steeds, had already betrayed

1776.  
February.

betrayed us to the two rhinoceroses, while they stood listening and moving their ears about just at the entrance of a narrow vale, through which we must necessarily pass, if we wished to reach our waggon before night. In this critical situation, therefore, we had no other resource than to shoot them immediately, or at least to frighten them from the spot. Of these two different methods we were most inclined to attempt the former, though neither our pieces, nor the charge they were loaded with, were any ways adapted to game of such an enormous size; my Hottentot having taken with him a small fowling-piece only, into which we put a leaden ball in addition to the shot with which it was already charged. My piece, indeed, was loaded with a tin ball, which however, was not near large enough for a rhinoceros. Notwithstanding this, we crept on till we got behind a large spreading bush, which, with respect to its height and the extent of its branches, was like a tree, and which stood forwards on the plain at the distance of fifteen paces only from the two rhinoceroses.

My piece, which had, unknown to me, got damp the night before, went off, to my great surprize and mortification, with a hissing noise, and hung fire a long while; and, instead of hitting the old rhinoceros in the heart, only wounded her, as we afterwards found, in the posterior angle of the lower jaw. It made her, however, somewhat swag about with the fore part of her body, and snuff up her nostrils, as if endeavouring to discover her enemy by the scent; but as we were to the windward of her, so that she could not get scent of us, she advanced forwards to the quarter where she heard the noise, close followed by her calf,

calf, with a slow measured pace, and seemingly full of attention, in all probability with an intent to search the bush all over which stood between her and us. The blood now began to mount in our faces, chiefly from the apprehension, lest while we were endeavouring to avoid one of the beasts, we should run into the jaws of the other; for with one rhinoceros alone, a sportsman, who is tolerable agile, may very well venture upon occasion to play at blind man's buff. My attendant and companion, the same Hottentot who had made so miserable a figure in the presence of the Caffres, now stood to his ground boldly, as he had promised to do, and did not fire, before the animals were just upon us; by this means being alarmed, they rushed forward with great violence, as we supposed they would, and consequently passed us, when the Hottentot instantly leaped up among the boughs of the bush, and I stole off to the other side of it. Having found our horses again at the place where we had tied them up out of the way, my curiosity led me to see which way the two rhinoceroses had taken. In fact, I happened to find them much sooner than I expected; and at the same time discovered, that they were nearer-sighted than I could have ever imagined, they standing about eighty or ninety paces from me on the open plain, without seeming to perceive either me or my horse, though they stood listening with their heads turned towards the quarter whence I was coming towards them. After this, getting off my horse, and walking on till I got within fifty or sixty paces of them, without any thing to cover my approach, I fired at the old one, which even now did not see me, only swinging the fore part of her body from one side to the other with great violence,

1776.  
February.



1776.  
February.



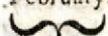
lence, and at the same time blowing so hard and loud, that our horses, which I had left in the care of my Hottentot at the distance of several hundred paces, were not a little scared by it. Upon this, the two wild beasts ran off through the bushes, where it was both dangerous and difficult to pursue them. The Hottentots, who were better skilled in this kind of chase, afterwards told us, that we should have done much better if we had fired at the calf, on which the small ball would have taken more effect; in which case they imagined, that the mother would have staid by the dead body till the next day, when they might have gone there and shot her likewise. In like manner they supposed, that the calf would have staid by the body of the mother in case she had been shot first.

It was as dark as pitch before we got to our waggons; and as here was no beaten path, I was under great apprehensions lest we should miss the road; though my Hottentot was under no concern on that score, being quite sure of what he was about. There was, however, great reason to fear, lest in the dark we should ride full butt against a rhinoceros, or else into the jaws of a lion. Once our horses startled, a circumstance which did not a little alarm us; till we observed, that what excited our fears was nothing more than a porcupine, (vide Vol. I. page 151.) The holes and subterraneous passages made by this, as well as the various other animals enumerated above, and by which the ground was every where undermined, occasioned our horses to have several falls, which put us under the disagreeable necessity of riding very slowly; at last we began to perceive now and then a little glimmer from the fire of  
our

our brother sportsmen who were left with the waggon at *Quammedacka*, and I must own, that I was not a little rejoiced at the appearance of this leading star. When at length we had got to our waggons, we were told, that our Hottentot huntsman had likewise that day seen and wounded a rhinoceros. Just before dawn two buffaloes came to drink out of the well near which we were encamped; but though we fired at them, we missed them in the dark.

1776.  
February.

On the 7th we went by *Hevy* to *Kurekoiku*, and shot a buffalo in our way. In the night we were awakened by several horrid dissonant noises, which, though quite dissimilar to each other, were uttered at one and the same time, so as to form a most dismal chorus. Among these, however, there was one which almost drowned the rest, and which in some measure resembled the disgusting kind of laugh, which the simple populace in Sweden ascribes to a spirit they call the *Gast*, or the shrieking man, but which is nothing more than one of the several different cries usually uttered by the *strix nyctea*, or screech-owl. By the light of the moon we could see on a hill near us, the glimpse of above half a score hyænas; and the horrid din we heard was, in all probability, nothing more than a tumultuous yell, set up by them in order to scare our oxen, and put them to flight, not daring otherwise to attack them; but these, with our usual forecast, we had made fast to the waggon. As I thought one of these ravenous creatures presented a good mark to my piece, I could not help, in direct opposition to the advice of the Hottentots, firing a ball at it. The shot, so far from scaring them away, rather occasioned them to repeat their attempts to frighten us; as the whole pack now

1776.  
February.

rushed down from the hill, and ran close by us at full speed, which bore the appearance of their having at first intended a general attack.

On the 8th, we continued our way homewards, when, besides a few scattered hartbeests, we saw a large herd of elk-antilopes; we likewise that day shot a buffalo, by which our Hottentot marksman was in the utmost danger of being trampled under foot.

On the 9th we again saw several elk-antilopes, hartbeests, and quaggas, passing by *Haffagai-bosch*. We shot a female elk, from whose body we cut out a foetus, which we carried away with us, and the next morning dissected. The viscera we found to resemble those of gazels in general.

On the 10th we met with a farmer, who informed us, that two days journey from hence, two Caffre princes were at war with each other on account of a few stray calves. At this place, crossing Boshies-man-rivier, we went up to a *craal* of *Gonaquas Hottentots*, who, in our presence, performed their military exercise, of which I have made some mention at page 158 of this volume.

On the 11th, one of our Boshies-men having been informed, that his nearest relations had removed along with their *craal* into this neighbourhood, wished to take leave of us; and as he had given us his company and assistance throughout the whole course of our journey, he asked for something by way of gratuity or recompence; which I readily complied with, to his entire satisfaction, by presenting him with a steel for striking fire, a brass tinder-box, some tobacco, a knife, and a few glass beads. He was the  
only

1776.  
January.

only married man in our party, and seemed to have more œconomy than any of the rest, having either for his own use, or that of his wife, loaded himself with the flesh of the buffalo we had shot last; some of which he carried extended over his shoulders, and the rest hanging on a stick, for the sake of drying it in the sun. When the time came in which he must part from us and his countrymen, he went away without taking any leave. In fact, it is the mode with the Hottentots, (as now, indeed, it is sometimes practised with us) to *eclipse*, as it is called, in this manner. However, on my calling out to him when he was at a considerable distance from us, *farewel*, in the Dutch language, accompanied with the Hottentot salutation *ʔkabè*, he answered me in the same language; at the same time making several aukward bows in the Dutch fashion. The other Hottentots laughed immediately at this incident, and (probably on this account) took a formal leave of us, as well as of each other, when they parted from us at *Zondags-rivier*, where we arrived in the evening. Here I met with an old Hottentot, who was born with four nipples, the two spurious ones being rather less than the others, and placed three inches lower.

On the 12th, we met with several peasants, who, with the permission of the present governor, BARON PLETTENBERG, had removed hither in order to inhabit this part of the country; which, for this reason, in my map, I have called PLETTENBERG's colony. In the evening about dusk, the thermometer was at 68 degrees, when the rain began, which continued all night long, with a south-west wind.

1776.  
February.

On the 13th, at seven o'clock, the thermometer was at 64, and the whole day was overcast and rainy. We saw a *koedoe*, and our Hottentot marksman, who had been courting along *Zondags-rivier*, informed us, that he had observed one of the sea-cows there, had her calf riding on her back, when she came up to the surface of the water, in order to breathe; but that as soon as she had got scent of him, she breathed with the edge of her nostrils only out of the water; and each time after she had breathed, dived, or ducked her head forward, with such nice exactness, that her calf likewise appeared with the extremity of her nostrils only above the surface of the water, and was able to blow herself too.

On the 14th we came to *Kuga*; the thermometer, at five in the afternoon, was at 72 degrees.

On the 15th, the thermometer, about dawn, was at 62. We saw some buffaloes, and three Hottentot fugitives, and paid another visit to the salt-pans, with the view of catching insects. At noon, in the shade, the thermometer was at 90 degrees. We paid a visit to a little *crad* of Caffres, which had lately removed to *Zwartkops-rivier*; and went to the upper part of this river, to visit a colonist of the name of GERT SKEPPER, who had long resided there, partly in conformity to some orders of government, and partly in direct opposition to them: for government, which, though it had long employed land-surveyors, was yet left totally in the dark with respect to the geography of the country, had not permitted the colonists to cultivate or dwell farther to the eastward than *Kabeliaaw-rivier*, but had

had left them at liberty to inhabit what part they pleased to the south of Camdebo; in consequence of which, this shrewd peasant had gone round about by the way of *Camdebo* from the Cape to this place, to take possession of it; and upon this pretence, had got a charter for the tenure of it; when, on the contrary, he would have been severely punished, had he gone by the nearer and better road. We were totally disappointed in our hopes of furnishing ourselves with bread at this place, as the farmer himself had chosen to be without it for some days, sooner than grind the flour in his hand-mill. Consequently, we lived some time entirely upon flesh. From the 5th of February hitherto, we had been provided with some very coarse meal, or gurgions, which our Hottentots, with the addition of a moderate quantity of water, had every day kneaded into dough, and made up into loaves or small cakes of seven or eight inches diameter, and about half an inch thick: these were baked on the ground, which had been previously heated by our fires, with great ease and readiness, by covering them up well with warm ashes and a few live coals.

A small society of *Gunjemans* Hottentots, whose ancestors, at the time that the Dutch invaded this part of the continent, inhabited the tract of country about *Tablemountain* and *Constantia*, now lived on friendly terms with the farmer above-mentioned. By what I could understand, this little society had long been without the exercise of any personal authority among them, without beggars, and without any penal laws and statutes, as well as without crimes and misdemeanors; having been united and governed only

1776.  
February.

by their own natural love of justice and mildness of disposition, together with several common Hottentot usages and customs. My Hottentots from *Zwellendam* seemed to hold in high estimation the virtue, freedom, and happy state of these people; so much, indeed, that they were resolved to partake of the blessings enjoyed by this happy race, for the remainder of their lives, as soon as they should have finished the journey with us at the Cape. For this purpose, they solicited me to buy at this place for each of them a heifer with calf, which, according to our agreement, they had a right to demand for their reward. As Hottentots, this way of thinking and turn of mind, did not by any means discredit them. I, therefore, advanced for them glass beads, brass tinder-boxes, knives, and steels for flints, to the value of nine or ten rix-dollars; in consideration of which, two of the best heifers in their judgment among the whole herd of cattle belonging to the *craal*, were looked out for them.

The most considerable part of this herd belonged to a widow, who was reckoned to be worth sixty milch-cows, and was (at least in this point) the most respectable female Hottentot I was ever acquainted with. She was childless, and was to be succeeded in her estate by her cousin; she seemed to be past the middle age, and, in her younger days, to have been a beauty in her kind. Besides a costly necklace of shells, and a spare cap, (vide Plate I. Vol. I.) (which by the bye I got from her, in the way of barter,) she was not better clad than the rest; having neither more leathern rings on her arms and legs, a better sheep-skin over her shoulders, and particularly no more grease upon her body than any of the others. It is true, besides a few common  
glass-

1776.  
February.

glafs-beads, I observed, that two strings of the small copper beads, mentioned at page 238 of the same volume, were kept by her in a pouch apart, being the whole of her trinkets and jewels, and the only things for which she could possibly be envied by the rest of her sex. However, I am willing to hope, that this vice had taken little or no root among these gentle and benevolent people; as the female just mentioned, who was so much richer than any of them, was not observed to take more upon her, and, indeed, scarcely to be dressed better than the rest. In fact, the other women smoked their pipes, without any ceremony, by her side; and these too were filled by my Hottentots, without the least respect to persons, with a close-spun and better kind of tobacco, which they had brought with them; while, for their entertainment, on the other hand, a ball was set on foot, which was to open late at night, and by moonshine. Here I must confess, that my companion and I, by indulging ourselves in sleep, lost a fine opportunity of seeing and describing a brilliant *Gunjemans-Hottentot* ball, which was said to be very different from the dances I have mentioned before.

In fine, it appeared to me, that the Hottentot widow I have just been speaking of, was the less liable to be the object of the envy of her compatriots, as, notwithstanding all her riches, she could not get at more savory and higher seasoned dishes, and consequently could not have more fashionable pains and indigestions, nor any disorders that would entitle her to higher respect than the rest; for in the hairy leathern sacks for milk is this salutary beverage, neither by nature nor art, prepared for the rich in any other

1776.  
February.



other manner than it is for the poor. They all roast their *onkjes* in the ashes, in the same simple way; and almost every one of them dresses his meat by boiling it over the coals, as it is a very uncommon thing for a Hottentot to have earthen vessels of his own manufacturing, for the purpose of boiling or stewing his victuals; and as the Hottentots absolutely detest salt, they must eat their meat fresh, or else dried in the sun; though upon recollection, it occurs to me, that the same purpose may be served by the addition of a little more or less fat.

Consequently fat or grease was here, and is universally among the Hottentots, who live at a distance from the Dutch, one of the principal comforts of life; and is, indeed, the only gratification afforded to this nation by its herds of cattle; and which is likely to prove a motive sufficiently powerful, to induce them to be eager after the acquisition of this kind of wealth: at the same time, I do not mean to exclude other motives, which in all likelihood co-operate with this; such as, for instance, some respect to the honour and advantage of being able to maintain several servants, or cow-herds, as well as the divine pleasure of doing good to their fellow-creatures. To the stimulus of this latter inducement, I look upon the Hottentots to be by no means insensible; as I have seen them display the greatest hospitality to each other, when in the course of their business, or merely for pleasure, they have visited one another from a great distance. Besides, it is probable, that in the other well-governed Hottentot kraals, any more than in this, no member of society is abandoned to any considerable degree of indigence and misery. But  
in

1776.  
February.

in consequence of the farther migrations of the colonists hither, and of the quantity of glass-beads and other commodities which I at this time brought to market here, and for which I found a good sale among the fair sex, I think I can plainly foresee a speedy and not inconsiderable revolution in the turn of mind and manners of this society.

On the 16th there arose so violent a storm from the north-west, that we did not dare to set out on our journey, for fear lest our waggon should be overset on the plains. Towards night, however, the wind chopped about to the south-east, and was less violent, being accompanied with rain.

On the 17th drizzling rain. At first setting out we passed two Caffre families just removed hither, and afterwards went to the southward into *Krakekamma*, passing by several hollows or bogs of different sizes, which contained very few saline particles, but on the other hand, a great deal of rain-water: these I have distinguished in the map, by the same marks which I have used for pointing out the salt-pans. I made this round, merely for the sake of taking a cursory view of two harbours or inlets, which I was told a small Dutch vessel had lately visited, and taken possession of, as it were, in the name of the government at the Cape, by erecting a small stone of marble, on which they put the company's mark. The Captain of this vessel is said to have informed his employers, that there was good anchorage in both these harbours, and particularly in that which lay to the south; which yet I did not give myself time to look at, but have notwithstanding laid it down on my map from the relation of others, and distin-

1776.  
February.



guished it by an anchor. Yet, as there is said to be no river nor springs in this harbour, it would not be of much use to ships which are in want of water; but, on the other hand, being nearer to the forest, it is more convenient for fetching wood and timber. The strand and the tract of country between *Zwart-kops-rivier*, and the rivulet or brook which I have lain down on the northernmost inlet of *Krakekamma*, besides being flat and without wood, were likewise found to be low and sandy, but from that part began to be full of rocks and breakers; and as it was seen from the land, between south and east, terminated in a sharp point, with a rock quite detached from it; which probably was some part of what, in the Portuguese chart, is called *Point Padron*. The weather now cleared up for a while, so that I got a good view of *Sunday* river, and the two islands situated near it: all this, however, requires a more accurate investigation, and likewise to be delineated on a separate chart and on a larger scale, than can reasonably be expected in so general a map as mine; which, therefore, can only serve, in this respect, as a foundation for the farther and more minute researches of navigators.

Government having lately allowed the colonists to inhabit *Krakekamma*, a farmer had twelve days before left a number of cattle here in the care of one Hottentot only.

On his removal hither, as the farmer was walking out with his hounds after him, a lioness had killed one of his oxen in the dusk of the evening, but was scared away from its prey by the noise made by people belonging to the farmer with their whips, and by the yelling of the hounds. The following day they looked after the lioness in vain, but

1776.  
February.

but instead of her found her three whelps, which did not offer to fly in the least, but proudly put themselves into a posture of defence against the dogs, which were nearly four times their number, and which immediately tore them in pieces: for in fact, these hounds were not much smaller than the wild beasts themselves, which moreover were observed to be very rough and rugged, lean, and seemingly half starved; so that the lioness herself was supposed to have perished with hunger, or else to be sick, especially, as she never afterwards made her appearance in those parts to take her revenge.

On the 18th, in the morning, the thermometer was at 67 degrees, so that probably the temperature of the air near the sea, was here, as it is in general elsewhere, milder than it was farther up the country.

On the 19th we shot a hartbeest.

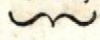
On the 20th we came to a farm newly laid out, and situated on an eminence, from which, early the next morning, we saw thousands of buffaloes in a line one after another, crossing the plains by the sea side, that were inclosed by a thick wood, out of which these animals were then marching, probably with a view to spread themselves out in the pastures, and graze at a distance from each other; after having, perhaps, been obliged to herd together in the night, in order to defend themselves against some lions. In the afternoon we shot an old buffalo, and at the same time arrived at a farm newly laid out, near a little lake, fen, or hollow, filled with fresh water to some depth, where we shot a few ducks, and I made a drawing of the live buffalo-calf I mentioned at page 66 of this volume.

1776.  
February.

On the 22d we met with some farmers of our acquaintance, who, with their wives, children, and cattle, had removed into *Krakekamma*. These honest rustics gave us much pleasure, by news of different kinds they brought from the Cape, and from our friends on the road; being on their parts very happy to find us safe and in a whole skin, as people had been all along apprehensive that the Caffres would cut us in pieces; and this was supposed to have been actually the case, on account of the long stay we had made before we returned. We then took a trip to *Van Staades-rivier*, to see the same Gonaquas Hottentots, which we had met with before in our journey to *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*. But as the current of this river was dammed up in a considerable degree by storms and the surge of the sea, we were obliged next morning to go back by a road two hours round about, before, on account of mountains and other such impediments, we could find a shallower place; by which at length, however, we passed this river. We there met with several Hottentot families, who called themselves *Damaquas*, and seemed to have a greater affinity to the Caffres than the Gonaquas had. Then we came to a pretty steep hill, which, though only a few hundred yards long, took six oxen a good hour's work and hard tugging to go up it with the waggon, which might, had there been occasion for it, have been drawn by one pair only on level ground.—On the 22d we stopped at *Galge-bosch*.—On the 23d at *Lorris-rivier*, and on the 24th we staid at *Camtours-rivier*, with Captain KIES, whom I mentioned at page 1 of this volume; and who, in consideration of a trifle that I gave

gave him to boot, swopped with me for two of my oxen, which were become quite usefess to me. A pair of young lively oxen, full of fire and spirit, and as swift-footed as deer, which I received instead of these, were each of them immediately yoked with a steady old ox, and in the space of a few hours were pretty well broke in, with the assistance of the large whip. In fact, the reader must not imagine that these animals are as slow and heavy in Africa as they are in our country, where they are obliged to be kept within doors during our long winters: but should recollect, on the contrary, what I have related at page 238 of this volume, concerning a Hottentot who had trained up his pack-ox to hunting.

1776.  
February.



On the 26th we arrived at *Cabeljaaww-rivier*; and the same day, the bailiff of the farm of this name, Mr. IMMELMAN and I rode towards the lower part of *Camtours-rivier*, in order to look out for the sea-cows; of the way of life and manners of these animals, I have already spoken at page 284 of this volume. To what has been there advanced I will add, that we now saw these animals going out to sea with the tide, as, indeed, it is said, they are in general used to do. At this time they appeared to enjoy themselves, by blowing, rolling, and tossing about in the water, which was here already salt, but were said to return in greater silence with the flood tide. On account of the rushes and weeds which grew at the side of the river, our shot did not take place; by which means likewise the sea-cows were made so shy, that for a long while after they could not be attacked with any hopes of success.

There

1776.  
February.

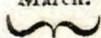
There was a single track more beaten than the others by the buffaloes, which led to the lower part of the river through a very close thicket full of thorns and briars, but otherwise cut through in every direction with a labyrinth of buffalo-paths. An old buffalo, with hardly any hair upon its hide, which rushed out of a bush close to us, and was very near knocking us down, confounded our guide, so that he lost his usual marks on the road; in consequence of which, we were obliged to ride backwards and forwards above two hours, being all the while in no small danger from the buffaloes; and absolutely uncertain whether we should be able to get out of the labyrinth in the space of as many days, especially if the sun did not shine out, whereby we might discover whereabouts we were. After this, we gave chase to and wounded a *bartbeest* on the open plains.

On the 28th we rode to our old and opulent friend JACOB KOK, near *Sea-cow* river; where, after an absence of about three months, during which we had been continually shifting our lodging, we now, by the care of our kind hostess, had an opportunity of resting our weary limbs and bodies broke down, as it were, with fatigue, on the softest beds in the best bed-chamber. But scarcely two nights had passed, after so agreeable a change, before we found ourselves, (while sinking in the yielding down,) involved in heavy though restless slumbers, attended with the most uneasy dreams; slumbers with which we had to struggle at a late hour every morning, almost as if we had been in the agonies of death: instead of this, before our return  
hither,

1776.  
March.  


hither, though on the ground, and in the open air, we had ever enjoyed an easy, cool, and refreshing sleep; out of which we were accustomed to awake of our own accord, as early and brisk as the rest of the animal creation, which awoke with the first dawn of day. On the 29th, the day after our arrival, it rained all day long, with the wind at south-east.

March the 1st and 2d rainy, with the wind at south-east. The thermometer at 72. We staid with our worthy and agreeable hosts till the 7th of this month. Now and then, during this period, I rode with my host to the sea-shore, and treated myself with oysters, at the same time taking some home with me. Some time before this, he had found in the strand there a bottle of red wine, which he had set by to regale us with on our return from the desert. This, though not very nicely corked, proved not only not damaged, but even excellent; and had probably, in consequence of a shipwreck, or of its having been offered up, either in a merry or a superstitious mood, by some brave tar to Neptune, been long tossed about by the waves, before it came to its original destination, to which we applied it by drinking each others healths. In one part of the strand, we perceived a strong smell of amber, without being able, however, to find any of this drug thereabouts. Several specimens of the *Gorgonia ceratophyta* (a black horn-like coral with a red bark) which had been thrown up here by the sea, I have brought home with me; one of these, which was three feet and a half long, and is branched out to an almost equal breadth, is considered by divers connoisseurs, who have seen the first cabinets in Europe,

1776.  
March.

Europe, as being one of the largest of this species that ever was found.

On the 9th we again visited *Sitficamma*, where we now found a number of snakes, which, on account of the farmers having set fire to the dry grass, for the purpose of manuring their lands, fled to the sands, and there at this time lay dead; partly scorched by the fire, partly dried by the sun, and in part rotted to pieces. There were some traces left of their having had four legs, so that probably this serpent was the *anguis quadrupes* of LINNÆUS. Numbers of the *bullæ achatina* of LINNÆUS, though only the *variata livida* of it, were found alive on the sandy plains, and up in the trees. When I was here before, I found in the very shell of one of these snails, several yolks of eggs (as it were) of the shape of common eggs, which, however, only contained a thin watery liquid.

On the 11th, having taken up our quarters near *Wagenbooms-rivier*, the most easterly part of *Lange-kloof*, we discovered at night on a sudden, that a tract, near three miles in length, consisting of fields of dry grass, was in flames. This conflagration, which a neighbouring farmer had caused, for the purposes of destroying the arid plants, grass, and bushes that grew on his lands, (but it must be owned, had set about it very mal-à-propos, both as to time and weather,) spread with the wind that blew very hard, with incredible speed, proceeding in a direct line to the farm where we were; so that our hosts were obliged to throw water on the roof of their corn-loft, in order to preserve it from the flames. We were likewise not a little anxious for the safety of our waggon, and were obliged to keep ourselves

1776.  
March.

ourselves in readiness to drive it into the water, as well as to put off our journey till the next day, as the fire burnt rapidly on each side of the road. By this way of dressing the land, a number of serpents, lizards, scorpions, and several other kinds of insects, together with young birds, are generally destroyed in their habitations. When we sailed along the African coast, in the *Resolution*, on our return from the South Pole, we saw of nights several large fires up the country, which probably were occasioned by the lands being set fire to in this manner.

A piece of *lapis lazuli* in a matrix of *quartz*, which I found in the vicinity of the river above-mentioned, is tolerably rich; but, supposing it should abound here, even then it would hardly pay for the smelting, on account of the length of the way and the badness of the roads, by which the coal and fuel must be brought hither for this purpose from *Sitsikamma*.

On the 13th we left this place, and arrived at *Krakeel-rivier*, which I now found to be a continuation of *Wagenbooms-rivier*, but have forgot to rectify the error in my map\*. In the evening, riding alone to *Aopies-rivier* on a mettlesome horse which I had lately purchased, and which was unacquainted with this part of the country, I unavoidably lost my way when the night was far advanced; especially as the road over certain fields was unbeaten and not to be distinguished. In the mean while, there came on the most violent storm of thunder that I ever experienced in any climate: the lightning frequently darting and crackling between my horse's feet, while I was naturally enough pushing him on as

\* This error is rectified in the present edition.

1776.  
March.

fast as I could, in order to get out of the rain. Though my speed, notwithstanding this, did not lose any of his mettle, but, on the contrary, made several sudden starts and leaps, yet the poor animal was so much affected at two different times by the violence of the thunder, that he sunk quite down to the ground. As I found that I run risks in divers ways, and met with several obstacles in the course I was steering, I thought it most adviseable to endeavour, by the assistance of the frequent flashes of lightning, to regain the beaten road which I had quitted. In this attempt I at last succeeded, and lighted upon a farm that was newly laid out, without any other premises upon it, than a solitary hut thatched with straw; in which, though I found no better company there than a parcel of Hottentots, I was very glad to have at least the comfort of a roof over my head; the fire being already quite burnt out, so that I was obliged to sit there freezing and dripping wet till the next morning. In the mean while, I was extremely anxious concerning Mr. IMMELMAN, who had set out the same evening, though later than I did; while he, having by means of a horse which he led in hand, and which was perfectly acquainted with the road, arrived safe at the place of our destination; and likewise missing me, was not less uneasy on my account than I was on his; and, after having made, to no purpose, several signals by firing a musket, among other surmises which presented itself to his imagination, he could not help being apprehensive that I was struck dead by lightning; especially as he had appeared himself to have been in great danger from it, by a flash having darted into the ground close by the side of his horses, in the same instant throwing them  
both

both on their knees. It rained likewise the following night, but without much thunder; and on the 15th, while we were on the road to *Kukoi-rivier*, it rained all day long.

1776.  
March.

On the 16th we came again to the farm of *Zand-plaat*, near *Klein-dorn-rivier*, mentioned in Vol. I. page 299. Here they were at this time very busy in preserving and drying raisins; which was done by macerating the grapes a longer or shorter time, according to what sort they were of, in boiling water, and then spreading them out on mats to dry. The uncommon drought which, this summer in a greater or less degree, infested the whole country, had, among many other inconveniencies produced here, as well as in many other places, a scarcity of meal, so that they had no bread at this farm. The cattle in many places died for want of fodder; so that at *False*, or more properly *Valsche-rivier*, where, as I mentioned at page 244 of Vol. I. I saw, the preceding September, several buckets of butter-milk thrown away, they complained that they had then hardly enough to wean a child with. In consequence of this horrid drought, which, according to the account I read in the papers, was probably pretty general in other parts of the world, my draught-oxen fell away in their flesh, being quite spent and worn out with fatigue, so that several of them died one after the other; which obliged me to supply their places with fresh ones.

On the 20th we came to *Zaffraan-craal*. On the 21st, early in the morning, we entered the tedious and tiresome vale, called *Artaquas-kloof*; and about the dusk of the evening, at a precipice by the side of the road, my waggon met with a worse accident than it had done during the whole journey,

1776.  
March.

as it was turned quite topsy-turvy. Besides the danger which one of our Hottentôts and two of the hind oxen were in of breaking their necks, I had the mortification of seeing my collection of natural curiosities trundle down the hill, in consequence of which they received considerable damage. I look upon it, however, as peculiarly fortunate, that I was at this time near at hand, by which means I, in some degree, preserved them.

On the 22d we had, with great care and trouble, got the waggon, together with our wearied oxen, through the remainder of *Artaquas-kloof*, having been obliged to unload it in two difficult places, and carry the contents of it ourselves. Our host at *Hagel-craal*, who had himself travelled a good deal in this country, was peculiarly happy at our having got off so well. This night there fell frequent showers; but on the 23d, being arrived at *Honing-klip*, there fell the whole night throughout the most dreadful heavy rain known in the memory of man; which continued, though with somewhat less violence, all the next day, being the 24th, by which means, on the 25th, the road leading from hence was intirely impaffable.

On the 26th we passed *Valsche-rivier*. They began now, in this part of the country, to take advantage of the wet that had fallen, for sowing; but though every grazier in this country has a greater quantity of land, draught-oxen, and bread than he wants, yet the farmers here had hardly every one a plough-share to themselves, and this as well for want of smiths as of iron; which, even in the town itself, are difficult to be procured. It hurt me extremely, that these good people should not be more plentifully supplied

1776.  
March.

plied with a metal with which our country abounds almost to excess, and of the implements made of which probably all South-America is not less in want than the southern part of Africa: where I at this time saw a wealthy farmer wringing his hands and complaining, that he could not take advantage of the wet weather, on account of his plough being broken, and was obliged to wait till he could borrow one of his neighbours. I must just mention here, that a plough-share, 19 inches broad and 27 long, such as is commonly used in this country, costs from three to five rix-dollars; and a small round-shouldered spade, with a peaked point, which might be bought in Sweden for ten-pence, is sold at the Cape for six times that price. Copper vessels also bear a high price in this country, but the demand for them is by no means considerable; and they must be wrought after the peculiar fashion of the country.

March 27th. Not having had occasion to remark, during the whole journey, the least disagreement among the Hottentots, excepting that a young Hottentot girl pretty severely rallied one of the same nation, older than herself, for wearing too small, and consequently indecent a *l'neite*, or apron, we were the more surprized to see this day, at *Zoete-melk's-rivier*, a terrible fierce battle between two Hottentots. I must not, however, forget to mention, that the combatants were man and wife, both equally small and stunted in their growth, as well as equal in point of strength; both born and bred in the service of the Christians, and both dressed in the Hottentot fashion.

There was at that time nobody at home but a few slaves, who every now and then parted them; but on the least

1776.  
March.

wry face or hasty expression, these loving turtles flew like lightning again at each other's throats. On my testifying my surprize at the peculiar readiness and expertness they shewed in boxing each other, one of the slaves answered me very seriously, "*Ha, baas!* there is no great wonder in that, for in the two years that I have been here, scarcely a day has passed without their having practised together once, if not oftener, before any body could get to them to part them." The singularity of this account was increased by the following remark, "that they had never been observed to be at variance of nights, nor had they ever had occasion to upbraid each other with the least infidelity." Matters being thus situated, as the best way of reconciling them, we desired the slaves to let them alone, and leave them at full liberty, in the phrase of the English sailors, *to fight it out*, and give each other their bellies full. This was accordingly done, and I have reason to believe, that they not only had enough of the sport, but that they were heartily tired into the bargain, and consequently that the ensuing peace lasted so much the longer.—On the 28th, 29th, and 30th, it rained more or less, but always with the wind at west. At *Krommbeek-rivier* a yeoman, who was a great observer of the weather, had remarked, that the most violent winds were the north-west and south-east; but that the former was generally the most violent, and that the west wind was the warmest; but what was very extraordinary was, that the north wind was the coldest. He informed me likewise, that the south-east wind was not near so cold as it was at the Cape, and that the west wind used to set in every evening. Foul weather mostly came into  
this

this country with an easterly or westerly wind. Though violent rains fell at that time at the Cape, or on the other side of *Hex-rivier*, it seldom extended as far as this place, the wind becoming only colder. Likewise when it rains here, the rain seldom extends to the other side of the last-mentioned river.

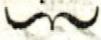
1776.  
April.

On the 31st I rode alone to a farm on the other side of the upper part of *Duyven-boeks-rivier*, having reason to believe, from report, that there was gold ore at this place.

On the 1st of April I examined this pretended gold ore, and found it was nothing more than a *pyrites*, which they had given themselves the trouble of breaking off from the mountains. In certain spots here I met with a blue clay, impregnated with iron, which at first, in some degree, imparted a colour to any thing it was rubbed upon; but in the space of a few days grew hard, and acquired a schirrous nature. I likewise found there a red ferruginous earth, or bole, but higher up in the mountain there was a great quantity of flint-sand. Towards the end of the preceding month a noise had been heard at a distance, and we were afterwards informed, that certain changes had taken place in a mountain, and in a little stream situated a great many miles on the other side of the high chain of mountains upon which I then was.

On the 5th we arrived at *Zwellendam*, from whence, for the sake of variety, we determined to pursue the remainder of our journey by *Hex-rivier*, *Cockelmans-kloof*, *Roode-zand*, &c. This tract of country was partly of the carrow-kind, and was so well inhabited, (chiefly by *wine-boors*) that I could not find room for distinguishing all the farms with-

the

1776.  
April.

the usual circular mark in my map. The rivers, or rather brooks, that lay between *Zwellendam* and *Hex-rivier*, were *Puspas-valley*, *Klip-rivier*, *Meulemaars-rivier*, *Leeuwen-rivier*, *Saaras-rivier*, *Fink-rivier*, *Goree-rivier*, *Seuj-rivier*, and *Nana-rivier*.

The *aloe* plant, (vide LINN. *Suppl. Plant.*) commonly called at the Cape *Goré-bosch*, has its name from the river *Goré* just mentioned: though besides that spot, this well-known vegetable, of which there are many varieties, being of a succulent nature, throve extremely well in all the dry *carrow* and *half carrow* plains; yet it grew in the greatest abundance in the tract of country lying round about *Muscle-bay*, *Gaurits* and *Duyvenboeks-riviers*; so that in certain spots thereabouts, and that chiefly on the declivity of mountains, these plants formed groves, (as it were) of small palm-trees: as the stems which arose from, and were composed of the thick succulent leaves, in consequence of almost the whole of each leaf, after being dried up and withered towards the bottom, having fallen off, or at least having been stripped off purposely, (by which means they had moreover acquired a rough, brown, and parched appearance) were, however, for the most part, strait and erect, from eight to thirty feet in height, and about one thick, and were terminated by pale green tufts of fresh and healthy leaves.

Not only the use, but even the real name of this plant, (*viz. aloe*) was, as I have been told by many people, long unknown to the colonists, and for this reason had been neglected and held cheap by them. It is true, there had been always in the service of the government a number of Negro slaves, who, at the place of their nativity, (another part  
of

of the African coast) had learned the method of preparing, as well as the value of the gum aloe; but bowing as they did, beneath the yoke of slavery, they would rather at any time have seen a dart pierce the hearts of their tyrants, than be instrumental in procuring them any additional knowledge or wealth of what kind soever; by which, on the one side, the pride, avarice, and power of their masters, and on the other side, their work, as well as the number of slaves employed would be increased. For this reason, the use of the aloe was for a long time kept a secret among the slaves; who, indeed, made a point of conscience of not revealing it, till one of them, called GOREE, discovered it to a colonist of the DE WITT family. Whether this proceeded from gratitude to his master for his humane treatment of him, or whether it was done in hopes of being rewarded for it, they could not inform me with any certainty: they only knew, that DE WITT had, through this discovery, obtained an exclusive privilege for the delivery of a certain quantity of aloes to the East-India company, and had given up to GOREE the inspection of the whole work. It is likewise after the name of this slave, that the aloe plant is still to this day in Africa most commonly, if not solely, called the *Goree-bosch*.

The method in which gum aloes is prepared in Africa, has, it is true, been described before by professor THUNBERG, (vide Transactions of the Swedish Physiographical Society, Part I. Art. II. page 112.) But as my readers may, nevertheless, probably expect some information on this subject, I have thought proper to communicate the following particulars concerning this subject.

1776.  
April.

The leaves being cut off at some distance from the stem, as many of them as there is room for are placed in a slanting position over the concavity of another aloe leaf laid under them for this purpose, so that the juice, trickling down from the leaves which are cut, may be collected in it. After this, the whole quantity of juice contained in these reservoirs, is boiled down to about a third part, and being poured out into boxes, is left to coagulate and grow hard.

Others again content themselves with wiping off the juice, which comes out of the fresh cut leaves, several times against the edges of a marble vessel, wherein it is by this means collected, and is afterwards boiled down.

In the methods described above, which, however, in all probability, are by no means the best that might be imagined, only a few drops, or at most a thimbleful or two, are procured from each leaf. By handling it, the hands of the operator are subject to be made sore; and the boiling of it down, an operation which is likewise performed in the open air, the operator being at the same time frequently exposed to the scorching rays of the sun, is also attended with its inconveniencies. Add to this, that those who at present make it their business to buy up this drug at the Cape, do not give above two or three stivers a pound for it; and it will not appear strange, that the Cape farmers do not think it worth their while to prepare this gum, unless they have young children or other people, that can do nothing else, to employ upon it. “ In the winter (*quaade mousson*) the aloe leaves are supposed to contain most juice; on which account, this season is principally chosen for preparing the gum aloe, and particularly fine and calm days;

as in windy weather the juice coagulates too soon, and cannot run out of the leaves." Vide l. c. The gum prepared in this manner is, when powdered, yellow, like any other aloes in powder; but the thin pieces that are broken off from it, and the edges of even larger pieces, are transparent, appearing as though they were made of a yellowish brown glass. Consequently it has nothing of that dark green cloudy and opaque appearance, like the other aloes which are to be found in the apothecaries shops under the denominations of *succotrine* and *hepatic* aloes. This dark colour, which is seen in a great quantity of aloes, in all probability proceeds from its having been prepared in a method very different from that used at the Cape; perhaps from the leaves being pressed, by which means a greater quantity indeed of juice is obtained, but then it is full of dregs.

1776.  
April.



It is true, I have often used the gum aloe of the Cape for medical purposes, but cannot take upon me as yet to give it the preference to the more opaque sort; in the mean while, desirous of exploring this drug in divers ways, I got M. JOHN E. JULIN, apothecary at *New Carleby*, to separate from each other the gummy and resinous parts of the gum aloe from the Cape, who found it to contain nearly equal quantities of both these principles.

Near the above-mentioned river *Goree*, farmer ALOVEN SMIDT, who resided on the banks of that river, had caught a dreadfully venomous lizard, called *t'geitje*, which he had kept in spirits of wine; and on the 19th of this month, on my departure from this place, made me a present of it.

1776.  
April.

I had long before this been told by many people, that the bite of this creature would produce a terrible sort of leprosy, which terminated in death, but not till the expiration of six months or a year, the body in the mean while rotting and falling away piece-meal. This man, however, gave me an instance of a Bugunese slave having, a few years before, been fortunate enough to cure a female slave in the neighbourhood, who had already experienced, in a pretty high degree, the effects of the *geitje's* bite. The patient, who had afterward removed to about sixty miles from this place, was supposed to be still alive and in good health; but the slave, they knew, had died with the secret, having never discovered either this or any other of the remedies of which he was in possession of, to any body. It has been observed, however, that among other means which he used, he had sometimes dressed the wound with oranges and lemons cut into halves. In the mean while, the matter deserves to be investigated in different ways. Among other things, animals ought to be exposed to the bite of this serpent, and the effects of oranges and other remedies on the ulcers that would in all probability arise from it, should be tried. It is a fortunate circumstance, that the *geitje* is slow in its motions, and not of a very irritable disposition; consequently the disorder occasioned by its bite is not common, though the animal itself is common enough in spring, or at least at certain times in the year. We sought for it, however, to no purpose, under the rocks and stones near *Krakeel* river, and in the empty shells of the *bullia acbatima* in *Sitficamma*, (where the inhabitants assured me it was very common)

mon) when I passed through these places. As the tail is apt to fall off with a slight touch, and is found filled up with a yellow matter, like that which is seen in boils and ulcers, and as no nails are discoverable in the specimen that I brought home with me, is it not probable that the *geitje* is a larva, which in time is transformed into a lizard of a quite different form and nature? I do not know for certain, whether I have seen this lizard alive or not; yet I think I remember, that I caught one of them at the warm bath, and, wrapping it up in paper, kept it in my pocket; but pulled it out again, through haste and carelessness, along with the wadding of my gun; not being aware at that time, what a venomous prize I had got and parted with. I afterwards heard the company at the bath speak of this lizard, though (if I remember right) by another name, being to be found at *Franse-boek*; but I considered the account they gave concerning the poisonous quality of this animal, as one of the tales by which I observed they endeavoured to alarm me, and render me cautious in the course of my journey. The *geitje* which I brought home with me, is scarcely three inches in length, of which length the tail makes the smallest half, and is very peaked; but in the middle is nearly as thick as the animal's body, which is without any scales, and at top speckled with dark spots, and white underneath, with from twelve to fourteen papillæ on the edge of the under jaw. There are five toes to each foot. I have given a figure of the *geitje*, together with a full description of it, in the Transactions of the Gottenburgh Society of Sciences and Belles Lettres, Part I. page 75. Tab. V.

1776.  
April.

1776.  
April.

I have already, at page 308 of this volume, made mention of a lizard as black as jet, which the Hottentots dread very much, as being highly venomous.

Not having room for them within the limits which I have prescribed to myself in this volume, I am obliged to postpone the description of the African lizards, as well as several other matters, for the present, with an intention to give them to the public at some future period, in a separate treatise, or by some other opportunity. The following lizard, however, which is much the largest in the whole colony, and to which I shall give the name of *lacerta Capensis*, deserves to be briefly mentioned, were it only on account of the hardness of its nature, and the difficulty with which I found it to be deprived of life. It is true, it bears some distant resemblance to that of SEBA, from Ceylon, Tom. I. Tab. 94. Fig. I. in the rings or girdles with which it is encircled; but it has a much greater number of them, not to speak of the remarkable dissimilarity there is between them in point of colour, which may be collected from the following character of that from the Cape.

“*Lacerta Capensis*, cauda compressa supra carinata, Zonis 16, seu 18, albis totidemque nigris alternantibus annulata, apice nigra. Corpore subsquamoso, superne ex nigro viridique fusco, subtus albido, fasciis 16—18, nigris anomalis notato. Harum 8 circiter juguli, 9 autem Pectoris Abdominisque regiones occupant.”

One of this species, of the middle size, which, together with its two young ones, I brought home with me from *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, was about two feet long in the body,  
and

and three in the tail; having caught her by the neck, so that she could not bite me, and finding that it required some strength to hold her fast, I got a large worsted needle, and gave her several punctures with it, not only in the heart, but in every part of the cranium which was in contact with the brain. This, however, was so far from answering my purpose, which was to kill her in the most speedy and least painful manner, without mangling or mutilating her, that she seemed still to have life enough left to be able to run away. After this my host undertook to put an end to her, and after having given her several hard squeezes about the chest, and tied her feet together, hung her up by the neck in a noose, which he drew as close as he possibly could. From this situation she was found in the space of 48 hours to have extricated herself, though she still remained near the farm, appearing at the same time to be almost entirely exhausted. Upon this, we tied her feet close behind her, so that with her long and sharp claws, of which she had five upon each foot, she could not damage the serpents and other animals which I kept in a cask of brandy, and among which I put her with my own hands, holding her a long time under the surface of the liquor; yet she was so far from being suffocated immediately by the strength of the liquor, that she flounced about a good deal in it; and even a quarter of an hour afterwards, convinced us by her motions that she had still some life remaining in her. This species of lizard I found to be amphibious, living in water as well as on land, and likewise that it grew to a still greater size; consequently it appears to be an extremely long-lived animal, and, as well

1776.  
April.

on

1776.  
April.

on account of this property, as of that of not being killed without great difficulty, to have an important office assigned it in the general system of the œconomy of nature. It was supposed, (and not without foundation) by the people with whom I resided, that this creature might easily be made tame, and that it was not in the least of a malignant or venomous nature.

I have this moment received the foetus of a very singular quadruped from the Cape, which has been kept in spirits, I can therefore do no more than give a short description of it in this place, which may serve as a foundation for farther researches in future.

It seems to be of a dark grey colour, and seven inches and a half long, measuring from the nose to the anus; in its body, tail, and feet, somewhat resembling a young whelp, but with a quite different head.

The nose is round and small, two-thirds of an inch in length, and projecting straight forwards, so as to form a right angle with the forehead, which is upright, and rounded almost like that of a man; and thus in these particulars, likewise very different from the long-snouted genus of *viverra*, or *weasel*. The mouth, moreover, projects in such a manner, that the upper lip forms an acute angle with the nose. Notwithstanding this, the under-lip and jaw project beyond the upper. The tongue is broad, and is round at the tip.

Captain ADOLPHUS BURTZ, who has enriched the cabinet of Natural History belonging to the Royal Academy of Sciences with divers rarities from the East-Indies, has made me a present likewise of this animal, which he had bought  
of

of a countryman at the Cape. This man told him, that it was to be found in the country round about *Saldanha-bay*, and gave him the name of it, which Captain BURTZ took down in writing, but lost the paper; so that this animal seems to be one of the regular and ordinary productions of nature, and no monster.

In the evening we came to *Nana-rivier*. At this time there lived here a widow, whose husband had several years before met with the dreadful catastrophe of being beheaded by his own slaves. His son, then about 13 or 14 years of age, was obliged to be eye-witness to his father's fate, and was even threatened with being made to partake of it, but luckily found an opportunity of giving them the slip; and after eluding their most vigilant search, hid himself up close from the forenoon till it was dark at night; when at last he ventured forth, with a view to seek a safer asylum at a neighbouring farm, and to accuse his father's murderers. These villains had resolved likewise to murder the mother, who was expected that day home from the Cape; but fortunately for her, though very much to her dissatisfaction, she was delayed by some accident on the road till the next day. By means of her son, who had made his escape, she received advice of what had happened. As the whole premises on the farm consisted merely of two houses, situated on a plain quite open on all sides, excepting that it was covered with a few straggling bushes, which grew along the little river or brook that ran close by the spot, the lad's contrivance to hide himself, though in fact extremely painful as well as singular, was the only one that could at this time possibly save him. It consisted in this,

1776.  
April.

viz. that he sat, or rather sank himself up to his nose in the river; taking care at the same time to hide his face behind the boughs that hung over the water. The murderers not being able to find him any where, he having as it were entirely vanished out of their sight, immediately began to conclude, that, in order to avoid the stroke of the bloody axe, he had rather chose to put an end to his life himself, by jumping into the river: notwithstanding this, however, they attempted to make themselves certain whether he was drowned or not. The means they took in order to effect this, was to sound the brook all over with the branches of a tree; but they luckily forgot just the particular place where the boy was sitting, probably as the river was in that part shallower, and had a brisker current.

I should doubtless have brought the tears into the eyes of our hosts, and at the same time made them a bad return for their civilities, had I, by questioning them closely concerning the particulars of this story, endeavoured so unreasonably to satisfy my curiosity. For this reason, I have contented myself with taking it down, just as I have related it above, from the accounts given me by Mr. IMMELMAN and others; and consequently was not able to learn with any certainty, whether the deceased had by any unusual act of severity provoked his slaves to commit this crime, by way of revenging themselves; or else whether the latter had acted thus, from a persuasion that the same crimes and predatory practices by which violence had been offered to their persons, and they had been deprived of their liberties, might likewise lawfully be had recourse to, for the recovery of this precious

right bestowed on them by nature, and might consequently be very pardonable when exercised on their tyrants.

1776.  
April.



Yet, whatever might be the real reason of the committing this dreadful crime, I am convinced, that it has its origin in the very essence and nature of the commerce in slaves, in whatever manner and in whatever country it may be practised; a motive which I found had as much influence among the Christians in many places, as among the Turks on the coast of Barbary, to induce the unhappy slaves, and still more their tyrannical masters, to behave very strangely; nay, sometimes to be guilty of the most horrid cruelties. I have known some colonists, not only in the heat of their passion, but even deliberately and in cool blood, undertake themselves the low office (fit only for the executioner) of not only flaying, for a trifling neglect, both the backs and limbs of their slaves by a peculiar slow lingering method, but likewise, exceeding the very tigers in point of cruelty, throw pepper and salt over the wounds. But what appeared to me more strange and horrible, was to hear a colonist, not only describe with great seeming satisfaction the whole process of this diabolical invention, but even pride himself on the practice of it; and rack his brains, in order to find sophisms in defence of it, as well as of the slave trade; in which occupation the important post he enjoyed in the colony, and his own interest, had engaged him. He was, however, an European by birth; of a free and civilized nation; and, indeed, gave evident proofs of possessing a kind and tender heart; so that, perhaps, it would be difficult to shew any where a

1776.  
April.

greater contradiction in the disposition of man, though in a world composed almost entirely of contradictions.

Many a time, especially in the mornings and evenings, have I seen in various places unhappy slaves, who with the most dismal cries and lamentations, were suffering the immoderately severe punishments inflicted on them by their masters; during which, they are used, as I was informed, to beg not so much for mercy, as for a draught of water; but as long as their blood was still inflamed with the pain and torture, it was said that great care must be taken to avoid allowing them the refreshment of any kind of drink; as experience had shewn, that in that case, they would die in the space of a few hours, and sometimes the very instant after they had drank it. The same thing is said to happen to those who are impaled alive, after having been broken upon the wheel; or even without having previously suffered this punishment. The spike in this case is thrust up along the back-bone and the vertebræ of the neck, between the skin and the cuticle, in such a manner, that the delinquent is brought into a sitting posture. In this horrid situation, however, they are said to be capable of supporting life for several days, as long as there comes no rain; as in that case, the humidity will occasion their sores to mortify, and consequently put an end to their sufferings in a few hours.

I am glad that, during my residence in the town, no opportunity presented itself to me of seeing any one undergo this punishment; which, though it is only destined for incendiaries, or for such as are guilty of sedition or murder, aggravated with peculiar circumstances of cruelty and barbarity, yet it appears not less shocking and revolting to human

1776.  
April.

human nature, than the very crimes themselves, and actually irritates more than it is generally thought to do, the other slaves in the town; whom I have seen compelled to be present even at such public punishments as do not affect the life of the culprit, in order that they might take warning from it. But the slave who is punished for sedition, is always, in the eyes of his fellow-slaves a martyr, that suffers for the common cause, and for having maintained the dearest rights bestowed upon them by nature, which is their liberty. Spikes, wheels, red-hot pincers, and all the rest of the horrid apparatus employed by their executioners, will never have with the sufferers the effect of convincing them of the contrary doctrine; on the contrary, they become still more obstinate in supposing themselves tyrannized over, and in thinking that such of their fellow-slaves as have had the courage to take away the lives of their own tyrants, and prefer death and tortures to the basely groveling and crawling any longer upon the earth in an opprobrious state of bondage, are examples worthy of imitation, and that at least they deserve to be venerated, pitied, and even revenged. The Chinese massacre at *Batavia* in 1748, affords a still more dreadful instance of the rage and cruelties into which men in general may be precipitated by the tyranny of their rulers. Had the Chinese succeeded in this insurrection, the governor-general IMHOFF, and M. THEDENS, would have been cut to pieces and devoured. (Vide ADR. VALKENIER, T. XVII.) May not we conclude from hence, that oppression and injustice, rather than hunger, have given rise to the practice of eating human flesh, which prevails in many parts of the world?—I have before observed,

1776.  
April.

that the *Bugunese* slaves are particularly strict and scrupulous with respect to the administration of justice. These slaves are a sort of Mahomedans, and nearly of the same complexion as the people of Java, though they are taken upon other islands in the East-Indies. They are not moreover of a humour to put up with harsh expressions or abusive language, still less when they are not deserving of it, and not at all from a woman; looking upon it as the greatest shame, to suffer themselves to be disciplined by the weaker sex. Many a master and mistress of a family, who have happened to forget themselves with respect to this point, have, when a proper opportunity has offered, been made to pay for this mistake of theirs with their lives. These same slaves, on the other hand, when they know that they are in the wrong, are said to thank their master for each stroke he bestows upon them; at the same time commending his rigour and justice, nay even kissing his feet; a circumstance of which I myself have been an eye-witness. In fine, they are reported to be capable of bearing the most cruel torments with wonderful fortitude, as though they were entirely devoid of feeling. There have been instances of their not having uttered the least cry or complaint when impaled alive, or broken upon the wheel. But should a *Bugunese* slave at any time happen to betray the least want of resolution in this point, his countrymen are said to feel themselves hurt by it, considering it as a reproach to the whole nation. The female slaves belonging to these people, are reported to be extremely constant in love, as likewise to exact the strictest fidelity from their lovers. In short, the bold and intrepid character of this nation, is the cause

1776.  
April.

cause that people at the Cape are not fond of buying them; and that the importation of them is prohibited, though in fact it is sometimes practised. The slaves from other parts, such as from *Mosambique, Madagascar, Malabar, &c.* are in general not so dangerous to their unreasonable and tyrannical masters. On account of this great tameness shewn by them, they are more generally made to bow beneath the yoke; and the mistress of a family may venture to give as free a scope to all her whims and fancies as her husband himself, with respect to these slaves. There is a law, indeed, existing in the colonies, which prohibits masters from killing their slaves, or from flogging or otherwise chastizing them with too great severity; but how is a slave to go to law with his master, who is, as it were, his sovereign, and who, by the same laws, has a right (or at least may by dint of bribes purchase that right) to have him flogged at the public whipping-post, not absolutely to death, indeed, yet not far from it; and this merely on the strength of the master's own testimony, and without any farther inquiry into the merits of the case? The master has, besides, so far his slave's life in his hands, that by rating and abusing him day after day, as likewise by proper family discipline, as it is called, such as heavy iron chains, hard work, and little meat, he may, without controul, by little and little, though soon enough for his purpose, worry the poor fellow out of his life. In consequence of this, the unhappy slaves, who are frequently endued with finer feelings and nobler sentiments of humanity, though for the most part actuated by stronger passions than their masters, do not give themselves up totally

to

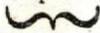
1776.  
April.

to despondency, and commit various acts of desperation and violence. Divers circumstances and considerations may, perhaps, concur to induce a wretch in this situation to exempt his tyrant from the dagger, which he plunges in his own bosom; content with being thus able to put an end to his misery, and at the same time to disappoint his greedy master of the profits arising from the sweat of his brow. A female slave, who had been just bought at a high price, and rather prematurely treated with severity by her mistress, who lived in the *Roode-zand* district, hanged herself the same night out of revenge and despair, just at the entrance of her new mistress's bed-chamber. A young man and woman, who were slaves at the Cape, and were passionately fond of each other, solicited their master, in conformity to the established custom, for his consent to their being united in wedlock, though all in vain, as from some whim or caprice he was induced absolutely to forbid it. The consequence was, that the lover was seized with a singular fit of despair; and having first plunged a dagger into the heart of the object of his dearest wishes, immediately afterwards put an end to his own life. But how many hundred instances, not less dreadful than these, might be produced to this purpose! These, however, may suffice to create all that abhorrence for the slave-trade, which so unnatural a species of commerce deserves; we will, therefore, at present dismiss this disagreeable subject.

On the 10th we set off from *Hex-rivier*, and went by the way of *Roode-zand*, a tract of land of the carrow kind, laid out in vineyards, and almost encircled with very high mountains.

mountains. The only road by which it was possible to go from hence to the Cape, went through a narrow, long, and tedious vale, along which runs part of *Klein-berg* river.

1776.  
April.



On the 12th, having got out of the district of *Roodeland*, we met with some farmers from *Sneeuw-berg*, who had just been at the Cape. These good people informed us, that a large lake had lately been discovered a little to the north of the latter district. Otherwise, there is not another lake to be found in the whole colony.—As far as I could understand them, it was of a species of *cactus* of a considerable size, that they made at *Camdebo* and other places in the colony, a kind of brandy, equally good with that which is prepared from grapes or malt. They likewise informed us, that there was a Swedish ship in each of the harbours, *Table-bay* and *Falfe-bay*, both which were supposed to be ready to sail. This piece of intelligence, necessarily caused me to make all the haste I could to get to the end of my journey.

On the 15th we got back again to the Cape.



## A P P E N D I X.

*Some Account of the MUS PUMILIO, a new Species of RAT, from the Southern Part of AFRICA, lately discovered and described by the Author.*

**T**HIS animal, which has been hitherto totally unknown to naturalists, I found in the forest of Sifamma, hard by *Slangen-rivier*, two hundred uurs to the east of the Cape. It is easily distinguished from all the other numerous species of the genus to which it belongs, by means of the four black lines which run along its back. The figure annexed in Plate VII. of this volume, represents this rat of its natural size, being drawn from a specimen which I have presented to the Museum of the Swedish Academy: and, as it seems to have attained to its full size, the *mus pumilio*, or *dwarf mouse*, may certainly contend for the palm with the *mus minutus* and *mus betulinus* of M. PALLAS, as being the most diminutive quadruped in the whole world. The specimen I have in my possession at this time, though impregnated with the spirits in which it is preserved, weighs no more than four scruples: consequently, when compared with the gigantic quadrupeds existing in the same quarter of the globe, and of which I have given descriptions as well in the Swedish Transactions

as in the preceding journal, it forms with them a striking contrast. Compared with the hippopotamus, for instance, an animal, which is seventeen or eighteen French feet long, and at least six in diameter, the mus pumilio is but  $\frac{1}{25000}$ th of the size of the former, considering the bulk of this latter as being equal to a cubical mass an inch and a quarter in length, and half an inch in diameter.

## D E S C R I P T I O.

*Corpus* tenue, compressiusculum. *Color Velleris* in genere fusco-cinereus; *Frontis & nuchæ* niger. *Lineæ* quatuor dorsales, longitudinales nigræ: Harum duo *intermediae*, & in nucha & ad basin caudæ in unum coalescunt; duo *exteriorès* à nucha, paulloque pone aures ortæ, sibi invicem parallelæ, ad basin usque caudæ ferè extenduntur. *Regiones utriusque oculi & narium* pallidæ. *Pedes antici & postici* quinque-dactyli, anticorum *pollicibus* minutis, conspicue tamen unguiculatis. *Cauda* longitudine  $\frac{2}{3}$  corporis, nudiuscula, pallida.

SPECIMEN OF THE LANGUAGE OF THE  
HOT TENTOTS.

*Numerals.*

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| One, <i>Ui.</i>        | Four, <i>t'Hacka.</i> |
| Two, <i>t'Kammi.</i>   | Five, <i>t'Gifi.</i>  |
| Three, <i>t'Kuona.</i> | Six, <i>t'Golo.</i>   |

*Parts of the Body and Clothing.*

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Hair, <i>t'Kum.</i>           | Nails, <i>t'Koloqua.</i>   |
| Nose, <i>t'Koi.</i>           | Finger, <i>t'Naniqua.</i>  |
| Eye, <i>Mo.</i>               | Stomach, <i>t'Amsa.</i>    |
| Ear, <i>t'Nunqua.</i>         | Tail, <i>Softe.</i>        |
| Tooth, <i>t'O.</i>            | Penis, <i>t'Ka.</i>        |
| Teeth, <i>t'Kong.</i>         | Caput penis, <i>t'Oræ.</i> |
| Lip, <i>t'Gamma.</i>          | Vulva, <i>t'Gau.</i>       |
| Hand, <i>t'Unka.</i>          | Apron, <i>t'Netie.</i>     |
| Leg, <i>t'Nu.</i>             | Hat, <i>t'Aba.</i>         |
| Stocking, <i>t'Nus Tanka.</i> | Shoes, <i>t'Noaka.</i>     |

*Men's Ages and Conditions in Life.*

|                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Father, <i>Bo.</i>              | Younger sister, <i>t'Kangs.</i> |
| ——, <i>t'O.</i>                 | Young girl, <i>Traköfi.</i>     |
| Elder brother, <i>t'Ai.</i>     | Girl, <i>t'Gos.</i>             |
| Younger brother, <i>t'Kana.</i> | Lad, <i>t'Go.</i>               |
| Mother, <i>Mamá.</i>            | Slave, <i>Kobbo.</i>            |
| ——, <i>Saufi.</i>               | Master, Master of the house,    |
| Parents, <i>Sanna.</i>          | <i>t'Kukoi.</i>                 |
| Elder sister, <i>t'Kaes.</i>    |                                 |

*The*

*The Names of Animals and their Properties.*

|                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Tiger, <i>Kæffau</i> .           | Mare, <i>Abas</i> .            |
| Wolf, <i>Guka</i> .              | Fish, <i>t'Gau</i> .           |
| —, <i>Nuka</i> .                 | Buffalo, <i>t'Kau</i> .        |
| Elephant, <i>Coa</i> .           | Sea-Cow, <i>t'Gao</i> .        |
| Dog, <i>Tu</i> .                 | Hog, <i>Hango</i> .            |
| Dogs, <i>Tuna</i> .              | Horned Cattle, <i>t'Guku</i> . |
| Penis of a dog, <i>Tuna-ka</i> . | Sheep, <i>t'Gus</i> .          |
| Bitch, <i>Tus</i> .              | Cow, <i>t'Goös</i> .           |
| Lion, <i>t'Gamma</i> .           | Bull, <i>Hara</i> .            |
| Tortoise, <i>t'Gammi</i> .       | —, <i>Ho</i> .                 |
| Elk, <i>t'Kan</i> .              | Baboon, <i>t'Gorloka</i> .     |
| Roebuck, <i>Za</i> .             | Bee, <i>Oi</i> .               |
| Steenbock, <i>Gunima</i> .       | Honey, <i>Denni</i> .          |
| Jackal, <i>d'Intai</i> .         | Milk, <i>Bi</i> .              |
| Zebra, <i>d'Au</i> .             | Fat, <i>t'Nui</i> .            |
| Horse, <i>Hanqua</i> .           | Flesh, <i>t'Go</i> .           |
| Stallion, <i>Karangaba</i> .     |                                |

*Substantives not reducible to the former heads, Adjectives, Adverbs, Pronouns and Phrases.*

|                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Thunder, <i>t'Gulu</i> .             | House, <i>t'Kooqua</i> .     |
| Fire, <i>t'Ei</i> .                  | Road, <i>Dau</i> .           |
| Wood, <i>'é</i> .                    | Bad road, <i>Tradau</i> .    |
| Bread, <i>Bræ</i> .                  | —, <i>Tudau</i> .            |
| Pipe, <i>t'Nov</i> .                 | Good road, <i>Skundaba</i> . |
| Terra firma, <i>Houtniqua</i> .      | Callibash, <i>Karabu</i> .   |
| Washing-river, <i>t'Kam t'nafi</i> . | Waggon, <i>Krohe</i> .       |
| Water, <i>t'Kamma</i> .              | Good, <i>Huka</i> .          |
|                                      | Better,                      |

Better, *Oin*.  
 Bad, ugly, *Kaifi*.  
 Sick, *Kaifn*.  
 What belongs to you is good for  
 nothing, *Zgu kaiſi*.  
 Angry, *Solo*.  
 Why, or with whom are you  
 angry? *Solo naba*.  
 Cold, *Oro*.  
 Yes, *Io*.  
 No, *Aa*.  
 Thine, *Ta*.  
 Thy Horſe, *Ta Hanqua*.  
 Whoſe, which, *Danne*.  
 Who is come? *t'Danne koba*.

Who lives here? *t'Danne koba be*.  
 Our father, *Zika Bo*.  
 ———, *Ty t'ka*.  
 I, *Tiri*.  
 — *Fili*.  
 — Fæmininum, *Titti*.  
 Thou, *Tats*.  
 She, *Tatiſi?*  
 He, *Hekoe*.  
 Ye, *Zita*.  
 They, *Hekoina*.  
 Will you have any bread? *Tats*  
*Bræ*.  
 ——— *Sas*  
*Bræ*.

*Verbs Aëtive and Neuter, with ſome Examples of them in Phraſes.*

I am, *Titte*.  
 Thou art, *Kia*.  
 He is, *Oi*.  
 We are, *Zikatifi*.  
 We are there, *Zikatifi inaba*.  
 He is there, *Dan inaba*.  
 To come, *Ha*.  
 Come hither, *Heva ba*.  
 ———, *Jata ba*.  
 Come quickly, *Suſa ba*.  
 Do not come, *Ha gutti*.  
 To do, *Hi*.  
 To give, *Male*.  
 ———, *Mare*.  
 Give me, *Male gu*.

Give fire, *t'Ei mare*.  
 Give milk, *Bi mare*.  
 Order me ſome drink, *Ereka*.  
 Give victuals, *t'Koko mare*.  
 To eat, *t'Knu*.  
 I wiſh to eat, *t'Knu kau tiri*.  
 I am hungry, *Tiri kalu naba*.  
 Having one's fill, or one's belly  
 full, *Ele tekaë*.  
 To lie down, or lie along, *t'Koe*.  
 ———, *t'Kuwe*.  
 To ſleep, *t'Kom*.  
 I am ſleepy, *Tilika-kule*.  
 To boil, *Zain*.  
 The water boils, *Daukai t'kamma*

|                                     |                                          |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Truth, it is true, <i>Kammafa</i> . | Good day, Master! <i>t'Abé t'kukoi</i> . |
| To lie, it is false, <i>Eige</i> .  | To steal, <i>t'Sa</i> .                  |
| It is fine weather, <i>t'Oroo</i> . | To kill, <i>t'Nautkam</i> .              |
| It rains, <i>t'Ukai</i> .           | A draught, } <i>t'Ka</i> .               |
| Remember me to your family!         | To drink, }                              |
| <i>t'Kabebare</i> .                 | Here, take it! } <i>t'Katfi</i> .        |
| Good day! } <i>t'Abé</i> .          | See there! hold fast! }                  |
| Farewel! }                          |                                          |

N. B. *t'* Prefixed to a word, indicates that the syllable immediately following is to be pronounced with a *clack*, or application of the tongue to the roof of the mouth: this appears to me to be effected, according to the different dialects used, the different emotions of the speaker, or the different subjects spoken of, with various degrees of force in one and the same word; and, indeed, sometimes to be altogether omitted.

*Specimen of the Language of the Snese, or Chinese-Hottentots.*

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| One, <i>t'Koa</i> .         | Water, <i>t'Kaē</i> .              |
| Two, <i>Tinnano</i> .       | Flesh, <i>t'Goá</i> .              |
| Three, <i>Tinnankaita</i> . | Abusive language, <i>t'Koägo</i> . |
| Four, <i>Tinnanonaka</i> .  | Lion, <i>t'Kalo</i> .              |
| He, <i>t'Natko</i> .        | Tiger, <i>t'Abé</i> .              |
| Fire, <i>t'Ei</i> .         | Good day! <i>t'Ave</i> .           |

N. B. I did not meet with any of this nation that could reckon farther than four. Notwithstanding which, such of them as are shepherds in the service of the Christians, are said to discover much sooner than their masters, when any one of the sheep in the numerous flocks committed to their care, is lost or missing.

It

It should farther be observed, that it is only the words denoting *fire* and *flesh*, and the term used in mutual salutations, that bear any resemblance to each other in the two preceding languages.

*Specimen of the Language of the Caffres.*

|                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| To reckon, <i>Sium.</i>       | Water, <i>Maafi.</i>                 |
| One, <i>Enje.</i>             | Milk, <i>Ammafi.</i>                 |
| Two, <i>Babini.</i>           | Fire, <i>Lilo.</i>                   |
| Three, <i>A-tatu.</i>         | The Sun, <i>Lelanga.</i>             |
| Four, <i>Sanu.</i>            | The Moon, <i>Janga.</i>              |
| Five, <i>Sumenini.</i>        | Rain, <i>Evula.</i>                  |
| Six, <i>Sinje.</i>            | Ox, <i>Gomo.</i>                     |
| Ten, <i>Sumi.</i>             | Horse, <i>Hanshi.</i>                |
| A Hundred, <i>Enkuku.</i>     | Lion, <i>Elepho.</i>                 |
| Father, <i>Bao.</i>           | Buffalo, <i>Eujata.</i>              |
| Mother, <i>Mau.</i>           | Jackal, <i>Pangalio.</i>             |
| A Man, <i>Doda.</i>           | Elk, <i>Poffo.</i>                   |
| A Woman, <i>Ufafi.</i>        | Dog, <i>Sesuja.</i>                  |
| Two Brothers, <i>Emkulo.</i>  | To give, —                           |
| Cousins, <i>Umsala.</i>       | A Road, <i>Ufala.</i>                |
| Kindred, <i>Sinlobo Tetu.</i> | —, <i>Eenzela.</i>                   |
| Friend, <i>Eklobo.</i>        | A sick Person, <i>Jaffa.</i>         |
| Hand, <i>Fansa.</i>           | One that is dead, <i>Ufile.</i>      |
| Finger, <i>Aëne.</i>          | The Ear, <i>Sila.</i>                |
| Thumb, <i>Umino.</i>          | Handsome, <i>Opepile.</i>            |
| Arm, <i>Enkomo.</i>           | Angry, <i>Siala.</i>                 |
| Thigh, <i>Mulemse.</i>        | Great, <i>Entue nune.</i>            |
| Foot, <i>Enjau.</i>           | Little, <i>Nonane.</i>               |
| Toes, <i>Emauffani.</i>       | Javelin, <i>Hassagai, Emkangota.</i> |
| Head, <i>Loko.</i>            | Knife, <i>Sifbatse.</i>              |

## A P P E N D I X.

|                                         |                            |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Waggon, <i>Noto.</i>                    | Come hither, <i>Ifat.</i>  |
| Copper, Brafs, <i>Emsibemfopi.</i>      | Run! Haste! <i>Hàrden.</i> |
| Glafs Beads, <i>Sintela.</i>            | To fleep, <i>Gualala.</i>  |
| Small redGlafsBeads, <i>Lenkitenka.</i> | To awaken, <i>Vùka.</i>    |
| More! Give more! <i>Ungeefa.</i>        | To wake, —                 |
| It is too little, <i>Ninnenì.</i>       | No! <i>Hajj.</i>           |
| Good Day, <i>Echiöte.</i>               | Yes! <i>Aoë.</i>           |
| To dance, <i>Ufino.</i>                 | Far away, <i>Kude.</i>     |

N. B. The Caffres do not make a noife with their tongue againft the roof of their mouths in fpeaking, as the Hottentots do, but pronounce their words in a manly and diftinct manner, moftly with a ftrong accent on the penultimate.

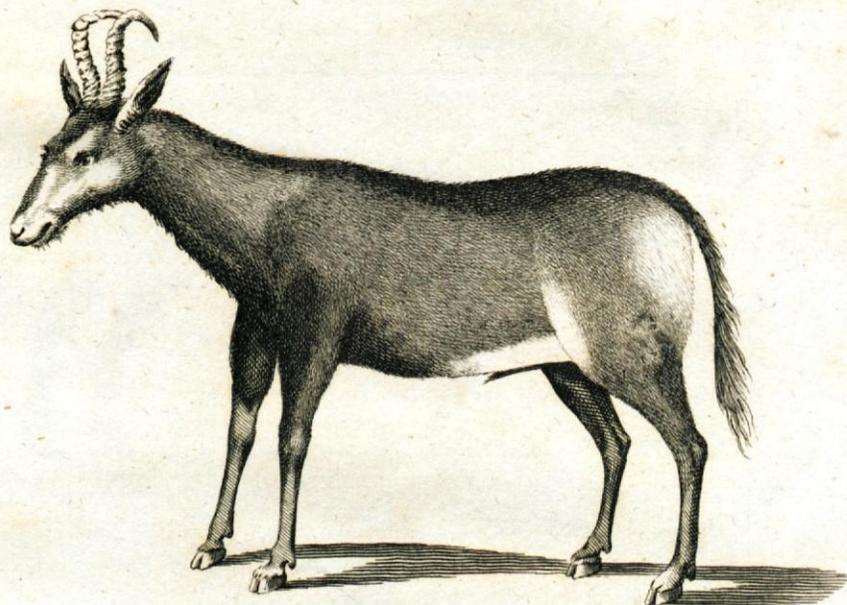
## A I R,

Sung by the *Hottentot-Caffres*, near Little *Sunday-river*.

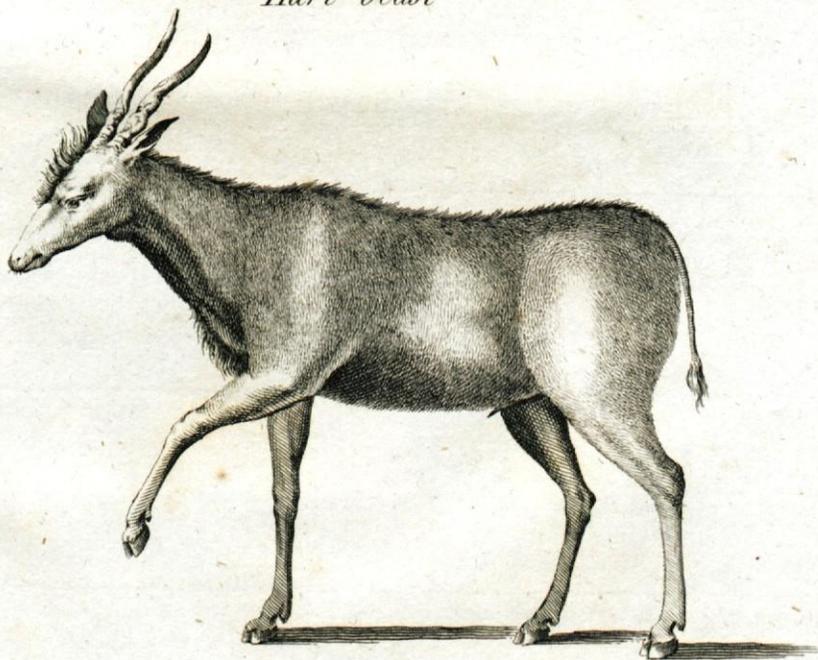
(Vide page 28 of this volume.)



## F I N I S.



*Hart-beast*



*Elk-Antelope.*



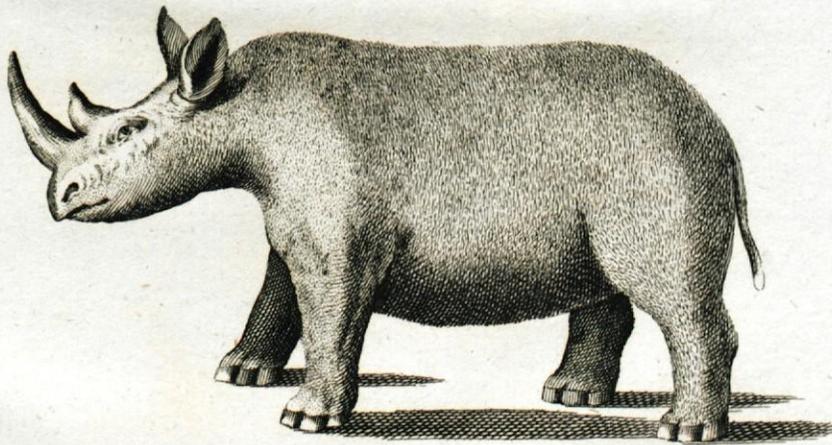
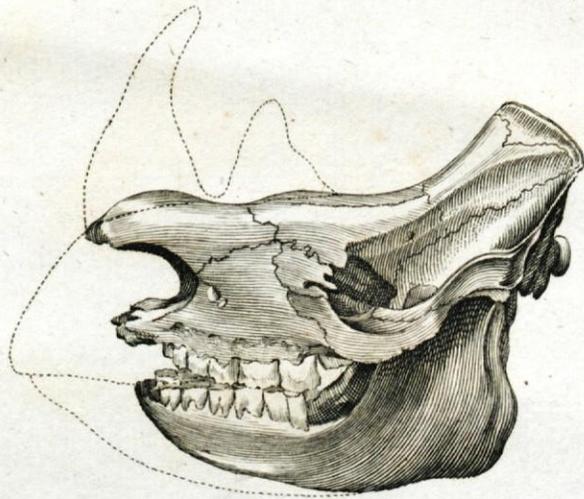


*Gnu.*



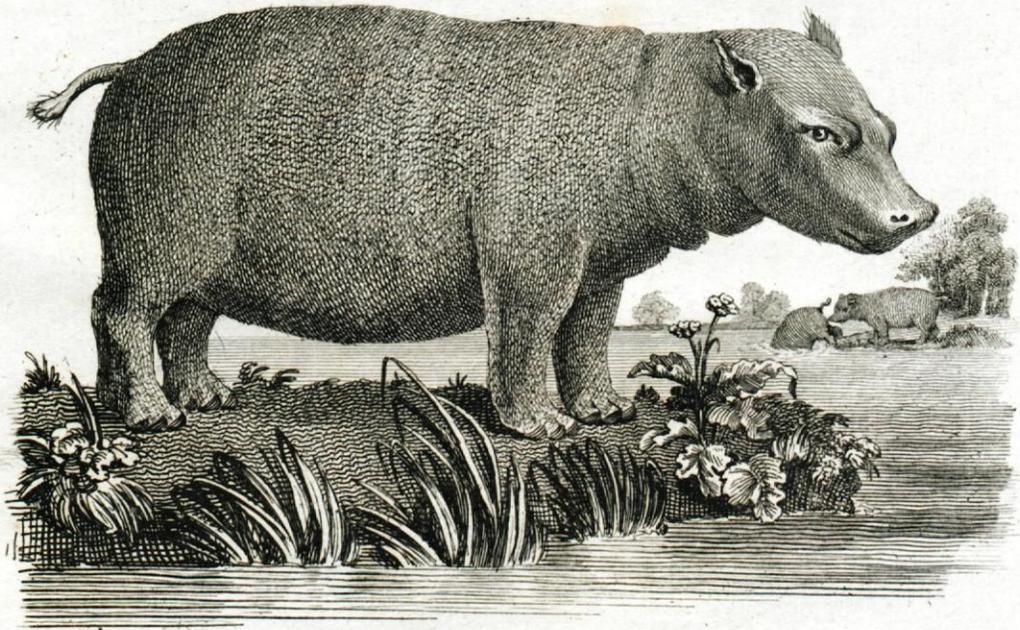
*Buffalo.*





*Rhinoceros bicornis.*





*Hippopotamus.*





*Springer, or Spring-bok.*



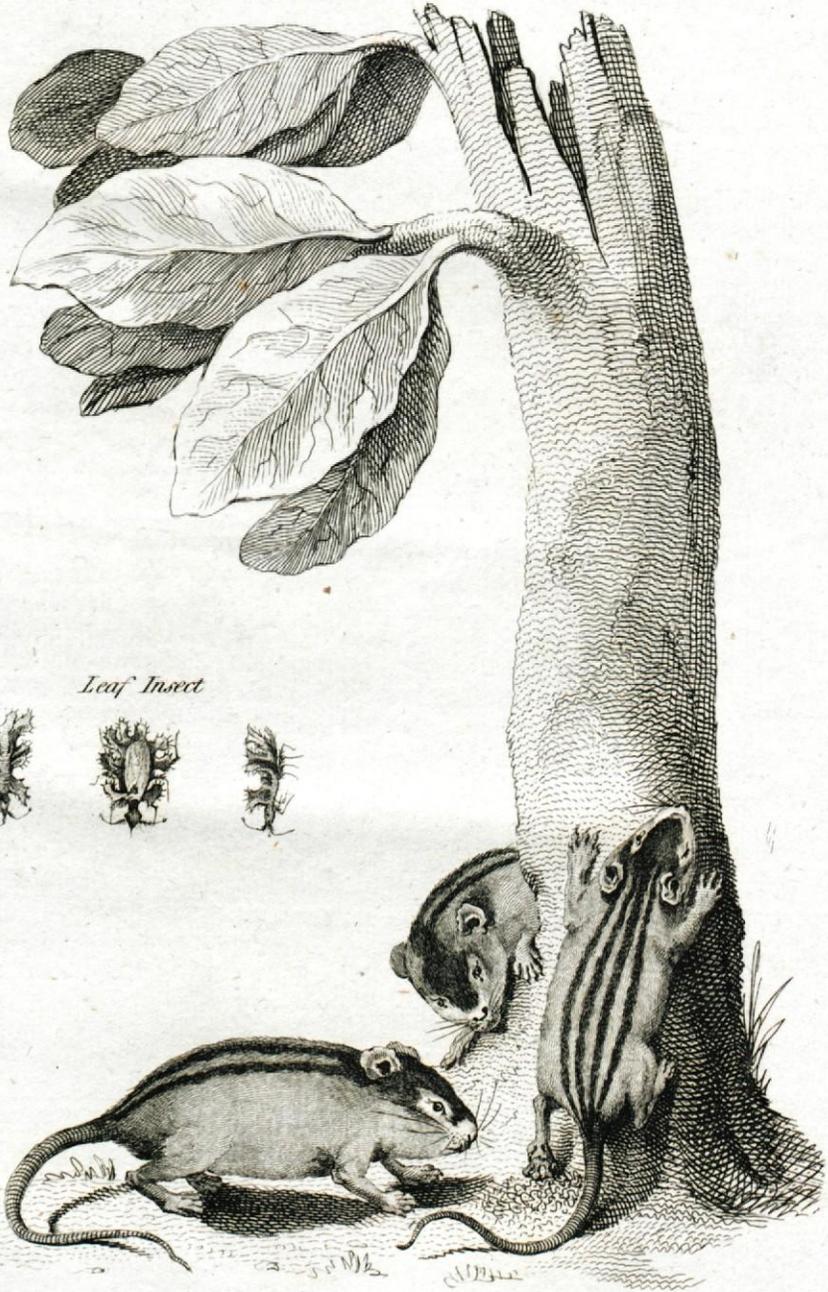


*Viverra Ratel*



*Wood-goat.*





*Leaf Insect*

*Dwarf-Mice; the natural size.*



## E R R A T A.

- Page 11, l. 2, from the bottom, before 66 *read at*.  
 — 37, l. 3, for Kuranoi, *read* Kurenoi.  
 — 43, l. 20, for orignate, *read* originate.  
 — 16, l. 7, for peculiar, *read* singular.  
 — 60, l. 4, from the bottom, after kill, *read* with guns.  
 — 65, l. 8, from bottom, for is, *read* proves.  
 — — 7, ———, after as, *read* in that case.  
 — 248, l. 7, from bottom, *read* CHAP. XV. JOURNEY FROM AGTER  
 BRUNTJES-HOOGTE TO THE TWO VISCH-RIVIERS, AND RE-  
 SIDENCE AT THOSE PLACES.  
 — 289, l. 18, for globules, *read* small lobes.  
 — —, l. 26, for bafes, *read* base.  
 — 300, l. 9, from bottom, *read* CHAP. XVI. JOURNEY BACK TO THE CAPE.  
 — 303, bottom, for only, *read* but.  
 — 304, l. 1, for and at the same time blowing, *read* blew at the same time.  
 — 313, l. 7, from bottom, for of, *read* or.  
 — 320, l. 12, for variatas, *read* varietas.  
 — 313, bottom, for relation, *read* relations.

In the original of this Journal, as well as in the map, the author has written *Drooge* and *Vet-rivier*. But *Vet* is a Swedish word, signifying wet in English; and as the river spoken of is in a Dutch colony, it should doubtless have stood *Drooge* and *Natte-rivier*. We have accordingly printed it thus at page 244, Vol. I. though we have not taken the liberty of making any alteration with respect to this word in the map.

E R N A T A

**DIRECTIONS TO THE BOOK-BINDER.**

The Landscape is to make the Frontispiece to the first Volume. The other Plates belonging to this Volume are to be placed at the End : the Map last of all.

The Plates belonging to the second Volume are to be placed at the End of it.

In the original of this Journal, as well as in the map, the author has written *Drooge* and *Ner-river*. But *Ner* is a Swedish word, signifying wet in English; and as the river spoken of is in a Dutch colony, it should doubtless have been *Drooge* and *Ner-river*. We have accordingly printed it thus at page 244. Vol. I. though we have not taken the liberty of making any alteration with respect to this word in the map.



DIRECTIONS TO THE BOOK-BINDER.

The Bookbinder is to make the Frontpiece to the first Volume. The other Parts belonging to the Volume are to be placed at the End of the first Part of it.

The Maps belonging to the second Volume are to be placed at the End of it.







